



75
आज़ादी का
अमृत महोत्सव
1947-2022

SOCIAL SCIENCE TEXTBOOK

वेद-विभूषण - I वर्ष / उत्तरमध्यमा - I वर्ष / कक्षा 11वीं

MAHARSHI SANDIPANI RASHTRIYA VEDA SANSKRIT SHIKSHA BOARD
(Established and Recognized by the Ministry of Education, Government of India)

सुषुम्णः सूर्यरश्मिश्चन्द्रमागन्धर्वस्तस्यनक्षत्राण्यप्सरसोभेकुरयोनाम् ॥

अस्यैको रश्मिश्चन्द्रमसं प्रति दीप्यते तदेतेनोपेक्षितव्यम्-

आदित्यतोऽस्य दीप्तिर्भवति।

सैषा चतुर्मुखाद्वीपा नानाद्वीपसमाकुला।

पृथिवी कीर्तिता कृत्वा पद्माकारा मया द्विजाः ॥

तद्देशा सान्तरद्वीपा सशैलवनकानना।

पद्मेत्यभिहिता कृत्वा पृथिवी बहुविस्तरा ॥

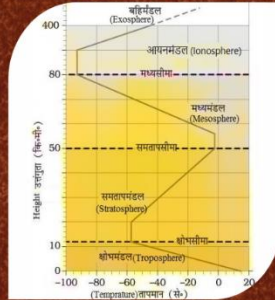
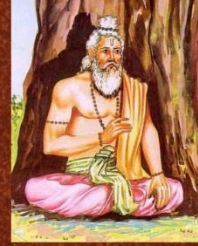
स ई वृषाजनयत् तासु गर्भं स ई शिशुर्धयति तं रिहन्ति।

सो अपां नपादनभिह्यतवर्णोऽन्यस्येवेह तन्वा विवेष ॥

जम्बूद्वीपश्चाह्वयो द्वीपौ शाल्मलिश्चापरो महान्।

कुशः क्रौञ्चस्तथा शाकः पुष्करश्चेति सप्तमः ॥

उभौ समुद्रावा क्षेत्रे यश्च पूर्व उतापरः।



MAHARSHI SANDIPANI RASHTRIYA VEDA VIDYA PRATISHTHAN, UJJAIN (M.P.)

(Ministry of Education, Government of India)

Phone : (0734) 2502266, 2502254, E-mail : msrvvpujn@gmail.com, website - www.msrvvp.ac.in

Note: -

Any Suggestion may be sent in email: msrvvp.textbooks@gmail.com, along with the proposed texts for replacement/addition/correction etc., and sender's identification details. The texts may be sent in Unicode font only.

SOCIAL SCIENCE

TEXTBOOK

Veda Vibhushan I Year / Uttar Madhyama - I Year / Class XI

MAHARSHI SANDIPANI RASHTRIYA VEDA SANSKRIT SHIKSHA BOARD

(Established and Recognized by the Ministry of Education, Government of India)



MAHARSHI SANDIPANI RASHTRIYA VEDA VIDYA PRATISHTHAN, UJJAIN (M.P.)

(Ministry of Education, Government of India)

Veda Vidya Marg, Chintaman, Jawasiya, Ujjain, Madhya Pradesh 456006

Phone : (0734) 2502266, 2502254, E-mail : msrvvpujn@gmail.com, website - www.msrvvp.ac.in

Text book developed by :
Cover and decoration :
Drawing :
Technical Support :
Composed by :
Reviewers :

©Maharshi Sandipani Rashtriya Vedavidya Pratishthan, Ujjain ISBN:

Price :

Edition : 1st Edition.

Published Copies :

Paper usage : Printed on 80 GSM paper with RSTB Watermark

Publisher : Maharshi Sandipani Rashtriya Vedavidya
Pratishthan (Under the Ministry of
Education, Govt. of India) Vedavidya Marg,
Chintaman Ganesh, Post Jawasiya, Ujjain
(M.P.) 456006

Email: msrvvpujn@gmail.com,

Web: msrvvp.ac.in

Phone: (0734) 2502255, 2502254

PREFACE

(In the light of NEP 2020)

The Ministry of Education (Department of Higher Education), Government of India established Rashtriya Veda Vidya Pratishthan in Delhi under the Chairmanship of Hon'ble Education Minister (then Minister of Human Resource Development) under the Societies Registration Act, 1860 (XXI of 1860) on 20th January, 1987. The Government of India notified the resolution in the Gazette of India vide no 6-3/85- SKT-IV dated 30-3-1987 for establishment of the Pratishthan for preservation, conservation, propagation and development of oral tradition of Vedic studies (Veda Samhita, Padapatha to Ghanapatha, Vedanga, Veda Bhashya etc), recitation and intonation of Vedas etc and interpretation of Vedas in scientific lines. In the year 1993 the name of the organization was changed to Maharshi Sandipani Rashtriya Veda Vidya Pratishthan (MSRVVP) and it was shifted to Ujjain, Madhya Pradesh.

The National Education Policy of 1986 and Revised Policy Formulations of 1992 and also Programme of Action (PoA) 1992 have mandated Rashtriya Veda Vidya Pratishthan for promoting Vedic education throughout the country. The importance of India's ancient fund of knowledge, oral tradition and employing traditional Guru's for oral education was also emphasized in the PoA.

In accordance with the aspirations of the nation, national consensus and policy in favour of establishing a Board for Veda and Sanskrit Education at national level, the General Body and the Governing Council

of MSRVVP under the Chairmanship of Hon'ble Education Minister, Government of India, have set up "Maharshi Sandipani Rashtriya Veda Sanskrit Shiksha Board" (MSRVSSB) in tune with the mandate of the Pratishthan and its implementation strategies. The Board is necessary for the fulfillment of the objectives of MSRVVP as envisioned in the MoA and Rules. The Board has been approved by the Ministry of Education, Government of India and recognized by the Association of Indian Universities, New Delhi. The bye-laws of the Board have been vetted by Central Board of Secondary Education and curriculum structure have been concurred by the National Council of Educational Research and Training, New Delhi.

It may also be mentioned here that the committee "Vision and Roadmap for the Development of Sanskrit - Ten year perspective Plan", under the Chairmanship of Shri N. Gopalaswamy, former CEC, constituted by the Ministry of Education Govt. of India in 2015 recommended for establishment of a Board of Examination for standardization, affiliation, examination, recognition, authentication of Veda Sanskrit education up to the secondary school level. The committee was of the opinion that the primary level of Vedic and Sanskrit studies should be inspiring, motivating and joyful. It is also desirable to include subjects of modern education into Vedic and Sanskrit Pathashalas in a balanced manner. The course content of these Pathashalas should be designed to suit to the needs of the contemporary society and also for finding solutions to modern problems by reinventing ancient knowledge.

With regard to Veda Pathashala-s it is felt that they need further

standardization of recitation skills along with introduction of graded materials of Sanskrit and modern subjects so that the students can ultimately acquire the capabilities of studying Veda bhashya-s and mainstreaming of students is achieved for their further studies. Due emphasis may also be given for the study of Vikriti Patha of Vedas at an appropriate level. The members of the committee have also expressed their concern that the Vedic recitation studies are not uniformly spread all over India; therefore, due steps may be taken to improve the situation without in anyway interfering with regional variations of recitation styles and teaching method of Vedic recitation.

It was also felt that since Veda and Sanskrit are inseparable and complementary to each other and since the recognition and affiliation problems are same for all the Veda Pathashalas and Sanskrit Pathashalas throughout the country, a Board may be constituted for both together. The committee observed that the examinations conducted by the Board should have legally valid recognition enjoying parity with modern Board system of education. The committee observed that the Maharshi Sandipani Rashtriya Veda Vidya Pratishthan, Ujjain may be given the status of Board of Examinations with the name “Maharshi Sandipani Rashtriya Veda Sanskrita Vidya Parishat with headquarters in Ujjain which will continue all programs and activities which were being conducted hitherto in addition to being a Board of Examinations.

The promotion of Vedic education is for a comprehensive study of India’s glorious knowledge tradition and encompasses multi-layered oral tradition of Vedic Studies (Veda Samhita, Padapatha to Ghanapatha,

Vedanga, and Veda Bhashya etc), recitation and intonation, and Sanskrit knowledge system content. In view of the policy of mainstreaming of traditional students and on the basis of national consensus among the policy making bodies focusing on Vedic education, the scheme of study of Veda stretching up to seven years in Pratishthan also entails study of various other modern subjects such as Sanskrit, English, Mathematics, Social Science, Science, Computer Science, Philosophy, Yoga, Vedic Agriculture, etc. as per the syllabus and availability of time. In view of NEP 2020, this scheme of study is with appropriate inputs of Vedic knowledge and drawing the parallels of modern knowledge in curriculum content focusing on Indian Knowledge System.

In Veda Pathashala-s, GSP Units and Gurukula-s of MSRVVP, affiliated to the Board transact the curriculum primarily based on oral tradition of a particular complete Veda Shakha with perfect intonation and memorization, with additional subsidiary modern subjects such as English, Sanskrit, Mathematics, Science, Social Science and SUPW. Gradually, the Veda Pathashala-s will also introduce other skill and vocational subjects as per their resources.

It is a well-known fact that there were 1131 shakha-s or recensions of Vedas; namely 21 in Rigveda, 101 in Yajurveda, 1000 in Samaveda and 9 in Atharva Veda. In course of time, a large number of these shakhas became extinct and presently only 10 Shakhas, namely, one in Rigveda, 4 in Yajurveda, 3 in Samaveda and 2 in Atharvaveda are existing in recitation form on which Indian Knowledge System is founded now. Even in regard to these 10 Shakhas, there are very few representative

Vedapathis who are continuing the oral Vedic tradition/ Veda recitation/Veda knowledge tradition in its pristine and complete form. Unless there is a full focus for Vedic learning as per oral tradition, the system will vanish in near future. These aspects of Oral Vedic studies are neither taught nor included in the syllabus of any modern system of school education, nor do the schools/Boards have the systemic expertise to incorporate and conduct them in the conventional modern schools.

The Vedic students who learn oral tradition/ recitation of Veda are there in their homes in remote villages, in serene and idyllic locations, in Veda Gurukulas, (GSP Units), in Veda Pathashala-s, in Vedic Ashrams etc. and their effort for Veda study stretches to around 1900 – 2100 hours per year; which is double the time of other conventional school Board's learning system. Vedic students have to have complete Veda by-heart and recite verbatim with intonation (*udatta, anudatta, swaritaetc*); on the strength of memory and guru parampara, without looking at any book/pothi. Because of unique ways of chanting the Veda mantras, unbroken oral transmission of Vedas and its practices, this has received the recognition in the UNESCO-World Oral Heritage in the list of Intangible Cultural Heritage of Humanity. Therefore, due emphasis is required to be given to maintain the pristine and complete integrity of the centuries old Vedic Education (oral tradition/ recitation/ Veda knowledge Tradition). Keeping this aspect in view the MSRVVP and the Board have adopted unique type of Veda curriculum with modern subjects like Sanskrit, English, Vernacular language, Mathematics, Social Science, Science, Computer Science, Philosophy, Yoga, Vedic Agriculture

etc. as well as skill and vocational subjects as prescribed by NEP 2020.

As per Vedic philosophy, any person can become happy if he or she learns both *Para-Vidya* and *Apara-Vidya*. The materialistic knowledge from the Vedas, their auxiliary branches and subjects of material interest were called *Apara-Vidya*. The knowledge of supreme reality, the ultimate quest from Vedas, Upanishads is called *Para-Vidya*. In all the total number of subjects to be studied as part of Veda and its auxiliaries are fourteen. There are fourteen branches of learning or *Vidyas* - four Vedas, Six Vedangas, Mimamsa (Purva Mimamsa and Uttara Mimamsa), Nyaya, Puranas and Dharma shastra. These fourteen along with Ayurveda, Dhanurveda, Gandharvaveda and Arthashastra become eighteen subjects for learning. All curriculum transaction was in Sanskrit language, as Sanskrit was the spoken language for a long time in this sub-continent.

Eighteen Shilpa-s or industrial and technical arts and crafts were mentioned with regard to the Shala at Takshashila. The following 18 skills/Vocational subjects are reported to be subjects of the study– (1) Vocal music (2) Instrumental music (3) Dancing (4) Painting (5) Mathematics (6) Accountancy (7) Engineering (8) Sculpture (9) Cattle breeding (10) Commerce (11) Medicine (12) Agriculture (13) Conveyancing and law (14) Administrative training (15) Archery and Military art (16) Magic (17) Snake charming (18) Art of finding hidden treasures.

For technical education in the above mentioned arts and crafts an apprenticeship system was developed in ancient India. As per the Upanishadic vision, the vidya and avidya make a person perfect to lead




contented life here and liberation here-after.

Indian civilization has a strong tradition of learning of shastra-s, science and technology. Ancient India was a land of sages and seers as well as of scholars and scientists. Research has shown that India had been a Vishwa Guru, contributing to the field of learning (vidya-spiritual knowledge and avidya- materialistic knowledge) and learning centers like modern universities were set up. Many science and technology based advancements of that time, learning methodologies, theories and techniques discovered by the ancient sages have created and strengthened the fundamentals of our knowledge on many aspects, may it be on astronomy, physics, chemistry, mathematics, medicine, technology, phonetics, grammar etc. This needs to be essentially understood by every Indian to be proud citizen of this great country!

The idea of India like “Vasudhaiva Kutumbakam” quoted at the entrance of the Parliament of India and many Veda Mantra-s quoted by constitutional authorities on various occasions are understood only on study of the Vedas and true inspiration can be drawn only by pondering over them. The inherent equality of all beings as embodiment of “sat, chit, ananda” has been emphasized in the Vedas and throughout the Vedic literature.

Many scholars have emphasized that Veda-s are also a source of scientific knowledge and we have to look into Vedas and other scriptural sources of India for the solution of modern problems, which the whole world is facing now. Unless students are taught the recitation of Vedas, knowledge content of Vedas and Vedic philosophy as an embodiment of




spiritual and scientific knowledge, it is not possible to spread the message of Vedas to fulfill the aspiration of modern India.

The teaching of Veda (Vedic oral tradition/ Veda recitation/ Veda knowledge Tradition) is neither only religious education nor only religious instruction. It will be unreasonable to say that Vedic study is only a religious instruction. Veda-s are not religious texts only and they do not contain only religious tenets; they are the corpus of pure knowledge which are most useful to humanity as whole. Hence, instruction or education in Veda-s cannot be construed as only “religious education/religious instruction.”


Terming “teaching of Veda as a religious education” is not in consonance with the judgment of the Hon’ble Supreme Court (AIR 2013: 15 SCC 677), in Civil Appeal no. 6736 of 2004 (Date of judgment-3rd July 2013). The Vedas are not only religious texts, but they also contain the knowledge in the disciplines of mathematics, astronomy, meteorology, chemistry, hydraulics, physics, science and technology, agriculture, philosophy, yoga, education, poetics, grammar, linguistics etc. which has been brought out in the judgment by the Hon’ble Supreme Court of India.


Vedic education through establishment of Board in compliance with NEP-2020

The National Education Policy-2020 firmly recognizes the Indian Knowledge Systems (also known as 'Sanskrit Knowledge Systems'), their importance and their inclusion in the curriculum, and the flexible approach in combining various subjects. Arts’ and Humanities’ students will also learn science; try to acquire vocational subjects and soft skills.



India's special heritage in the arts, sciences and other fields will be helpful in moving towards multi-disciplinary education. The policy has been formulated to combine and draw inspiration from India's rich, ancient and modern culture and knowledge systems and traditions. The importance, relevance and beauty of India's classical languages and literature is also very important for a meaningful understanding the national aspiration. Sanskrit, being an important modern language mentioned in the Eighth Schedule of Indian Constitution, its classical literature that is greater in volume than that of Latin and Greek put together, contains vast treasures of mathematics, philosophy, grammar, music, politics, medicine, architecture, metallurgy, drama, poetry, storytelling, and more (known as 'Sanskrit Knowledge Systems'). These rich Sanskrit Knowledge System legacies for world heritage should not only be nurtured and preserved for posterity but also enhanced through research and put in to use in our education system, curriculum and put to new uses. All of these literatures have been composed over thousands of years by people from all walks of life, with a wide range of socio-economic background and vibrant philosophy. Sanskrit will be taught in engaging and experiential as well as contemporary relevant methods. The use of Sanskrit knowledge system is exclusively through listening to sound and pronunciation. Sanskrit textbooks at the Foundation and Middle School level will be available in Simple Standard Sanskrit (SSS) to teach Sanskrit through Sanskrit (STS) and make its study enjoyable. Phonetics and pronunciation prescriptions in NEP 2020 apply to the Vedas, the oral tradition of the Vedas and Vedic education, as they are founded upon







phonetics and pronunciation.

There is no clear distinction made between arts and science, between curricular and extra-curricular activities, between vocational and academic streams, etc. The emphasis in NEP 2020 is on the development of a multi-disciplinary and holistic education among the sciences, social sciences, arts, humanities and sports for a multi-disciplinary world to ensure the unity and integrity of all knowledge. Moral, human and constitutional values like empathy, respect for others, cleanliness, courtesy, democratic spirit, spirit of service, respect for public property, scientific temper, freedom, responsibility, pluralism, equality and justice are emphasized.

The NEP-2020 at point no. 4.23 contains instructions on the pedagogic integration of essential subjects, skills and abilities. Students will be given a large amount of flexible options in choosing their individual curriculum; but in today's fast-changing world, all students must learn certain fundamental core subjects, skills and abilities to be a well-grounded, successful, innovative, adaptable and productive individual in modern society. Students must develop scientific temper and evidence based thinking, creativity and innovation, aesthetics and sense of art, oral and written expression and communication, health and nutrition, physical education, fitness, health and sport, collaboration and teamwork, problem solving and logical thinking, vocational exposure and skills, digital literacy, coding and computational thinking, ethics and moral reasoning, knowledge and practice of human and constitutional values, gender sensitivity, fundamental duties, citizenship skills and







values, knowledge of India, environmental awareness etc. Knowledge of these skills include conservation, sanitation and hygiene, current affairs and important issues facing local communities, the states, the country and the world, as well as proficiency in multiple languages. In order to enhance the linguistic skills of children and to preserve these rich languages and their artistic treasures, all students in all schools, public or private, shall have the option of learning at least two years in one classical language of India and its related literature.

The NEP-2020 at point no. 4.27 states that -“Knowledge of India” includes knowledge from ancient India and its contributions to modern India and its successes and challenges, and a clear sense of India’s future aspirations with regard to education, health, environment, etc. These elements will be incorporated in an accurate and scientific manner throughout the school curriculum wherever relevant; in particular, Indian Knowledge Systems, including tribal knowledge and indigenous and traditional ways of learning, will be covered and included in mathematics, astronomy, philosophy, yoga, architecture, medicine, agriculture, engineering, linguistics, literature, sports, games, as well as in governance, polity, conservation. It will have informative topics on inspirational personalities of ancient and modern India in the fields of medicinal practices, forest management, traditional (organic) crop cultivation, natural farming, indigenous sports, science and other fields.

The NEP-2020 at point no. 11.1 gives directions to move towards holistic and multidisciplinary education. India emphasizes an ancient tradition of learning in a holistic and multidisciplinary manner, including






the knowledge of 64 arts such as singing and painting, scientific fields such as chemistry and mathematics, vocational fields such as carpentry, tailoring; professional work such as medicine and engineering, as well as the soft skills of communication, discussion and negotiation etc. which were also taught at ancient universities such as Takshashila and Nalanda. The idea that all branches of creative human endeavour, including mathematics, science, vocational subjects and soft skills, should be considered 'arts', has a predominantly Indian origin. This concept of 'knowledge of the many arts' or what is often called 'liberal arts' in modern times (i.e., a liberal conception of the arts) will be our part of education system.

At point No. 11.3 the NEP-2020 further reiterates that such an education system “would aim to develop all capacities of human beings - intellectual, aesthetic, social, physical, emotional, and moral in an integrated manner. Such an education will help develop well-rounded individuals that possess critical 21st century capacities in fields across the arts, humanities, languages, sciences, social sciences, and professional, technical, and vocational fields; an ethic of social engagement; soft skills, such as communication, discussion and debate; and rigorous specialization in a chosen field or fields. Such a holistic education shall be, in the long term, the approach of all undergraduate programmes, including those in professional, technical, and vocational disciplines.”

The NEP-2020 at point no. 22.1 contains instructions for the promotion of Indian languages, art and culture. India is a rich storehouse of culture – which has evolved over thousands of years, and is reflected



in its art, literary works, customs, traditions, linguistic expressions, artifacts, historical and cultural heritage sites, etc. Traveling in India, experiencing Indian hospitality, buying beautiful handicrafts and handmade clothes of India, reading ancient literature of India, practicing yoga and meditation, getting inspired by Indian philosophy, participating in festivals, appreciating India's diverse music and art and watching Indian films are some of the ways through which millions of people around the world participate in, enjoy and benefit from this cultural heritage of India every day.

In NEP-2020 at point no. 22.2 there are instructions about Indian arts. Promotion of Indian art and culture is important for India and to all of us. To inculcate in children a sense of our own identity, belonging and an appreciation of other culture and identity, it is necessary to develop in children key abilities such as cultural awareness and expression. Unity, positive cultural identity and self-esteem can be built in children only by developing a sense and knowledge of their cultural history, art, language and tradition. Therefore, the contribution of cultural awareness and expression is important for personal and social well-being.

The core Vedic Education (Vedic Oral Tradition / Veda Path / Veda Knowledge Tradition) of Pratishthan along with other essential modern subjects- Sanskrit, English, Mother tongue, Mathematics, Social Science, Science, Computer Science, Philosophy, Yoga, Vedic Agriculture, Indian Art, Socially useful productive work etc., based on the IKS inputs are the foundations/sources of texts books of Pratishthan and Maharshi Sandipani Rashtriya Veda Sanskrit Shiksha Board. These inputs are in

tune with the NEP 2020. The draft books are made available in pdf form keeping in view the NEP 2020 stipulations, requirements of MSRVVP students and the advice of educational thinkers, authorities and policy of Maharshi Sandipani Rashtriya Veda Vidya Pratishthan, Ujjain. These books will be updated in line with NCFSE in future and finally will be made available in print form.

The Teachers of Veda, Sanskrit and Modern subjects in Rashtriya Adarsh Veda Vidyalaya, Ujjain and many teachers of Sanskrit and modern subjects in aided Veda Pathshalas of Pratishthan have worked for last two years tirelessly to prepare and present Sanskrit and modern subject text books in this form. I thank all of them from the bottom of my heart. Many eminent experts of the national level Institutes have helped in bringing quality in the textbooks by going through the texts from time to time. I thank all those experts and teachers of the schools. I extend my heartfelt gratitude to all my co-workers who have worked for DTP, drawing the sketches, art work and page setting.

All suggestions including constructive criticism are welcome for the improvement of the quality of the text books.

आपरितोषाद् विदुषां न साधु मन्ये प्रयोगविज्ञानम्।

बलवदपि शिक्षितानाम् आत्मन्यप्रत्ययं चेतः ॥

(Abhijnanashakuntalam 1.02)

Until the scholars are fully satisfied about the content, presentation, attainment of objective, I do not consider this effort to be successful, because even the scholars are not fully confident in the presentation without feedback from the stakeholders.

Prof. ViroopakshaV Jaddipal

Secretary

Maharshi Sandipani Rashtriya Veda Vidya Pratishthan, Ujjain


Maharshi Sandipani Rashtriya Veda Sanskrit Shiksha Board, Ujjain

FOREWORD

Keeping in mind the national objectives in the light of the National Education Policy- 2020, Maharishi Sandipani National Veda Vidya Pratishthan, established by the Government of India, provides Veda Pathshalas/Guru recognized across the country by the Maharishi Sandipani Veda Sanskrit Education Board, Ujjain (M.P.). Veda Bhushan first , second , third , fourth , fifth and Veda Vibhushan first and second years studied in student units and NCE for the students of sixth , seventh, eighth , ninth , tenth , eleventh and twelfth class in school education . R.T. And I am extremely happy to present a social science textbook as per the standards of state education boards and various published sources on Indian knowledge tradition.

The subjects included in social sciences like geography, history, political science, economics and sociology etc. provide us many ways of help in understanding the society. On the basis of this understanding, we try to make our future the best in terms of personal and social behavior. This entire world is the result of various events and changes over time, thousands and millions of years ago. This textbook of social science is definitely helpful in knowing and understanding these events, changes and results.

Most of the subjects in the social science book have been included keeping in mind the theoretical nature and usefulness of the Vedic literature, due to which the students will definitely feel Indianans and cultural pride. An effort has been made to make this book more useful for students by including various maps, pictures and updated data. From



time to time, guidance has been received from the Honorable Secretary in the work of making textbooks. All the teachers and teachers of Rashtriya Adarsh Ved Vidyalaya have contributed in terms of collection of topics , mantra collection, word arrangement, error correction etc. of social science textbook, especially Mr. Ayush Shukla and Mr. Abhijeet Singh Rajput ji as well as social teachers of various schools. I have also received unprecedented support from science teachers Mr. Vijendra Singh Hada, Mr. Vikram Basniwal, Mr. Anil Sharma, Mr. Mukesh Kushwaha, Mr. Laxmikant Mishra, Mr. Amresh Chandra Pandey, Mr. Narendra Singh, Mrs. Anupama Trivedi and Mrs. Neha Maithil. Along with all this, the work of Mrs. Kiran Parmar in typing work has been highly commendable. We heartily thank you all for this cooperation.

Our effort has been to make the Social Science text book as useful as possible for the Vedic students, because Social Science being a dynamic subject, there is always a need for modification and addition to the content in the Social Science book. In this context, suggestions from respected teachers, subject experts and scholars interested in social sciences are always welcome.

Thanks and regards

Date-

Dr. Prakash Prapan Tripathi

Mr. Ravindra Kumar Sharma



CONTENTS

Sr. NO.	Chapter Name	page number
	Geography	1
1	Origin and evolution of the earth	2-9
2	Structure of the Earth	10-20
3	Atmosphere	21-29
4	Water and Climate	30-38
5	Biosphere on earth	39-45
6	Natural disasters and disasters	46-54
	History	55
7	Early Society (360 Million Years to 1st BC)	56-63
8	Major Empires of the World (100 AD-1300 AD)	64-73
9	Changing landscape of the world (1300-2000 AD)	74-85
10	Temple Establishments in India	86-96
11	Cultural Heritage of India	97-104
12	Major pilgrimage sites in India	105-116
	Political Science	117
13	Constitution	118-127
14	Aspects of Indian Polity	128-141
15	Local Government	142-145
16	Neighbouring countries of India	146-153
	Economic	154
17	Indian Economy	155-164
18	Poverty and Human capital	165-171
19	Infrastructure	172-179
	Sociology	180
20	Social Structure and Transformation	181-185
21	Environment and Society	186-192
22	Prominent Sociologist	193-200
23	Present Indian Education System	201-206
	Appendix	207-208
	Model Question Paper	

VED VIBHUSHAN

1st YEAR

SOCIAL SCIENCE



Chapter-1

Origin and evolution of the earth

In this chapter- meaning of geography, area, relation of geography with various sciences, approaches to study geography, importance of physical geography, principles of origin of the earth, concept of universe creation in Vedic literature, origin and development of the earth.

Meaning of Geography- The word geography is made up of two Sanskrit words, Bhoogol, which means 'Spherical Earth'. Bhoogol is called geography in English language. The word geography is made up of two Greek words geo +graphs, which mean to describe or mark the earth. The famous Greek scholar 'Eratosthenes' (276-194 BC) first recognized geography as a specialized terrestrial science. Therefore, 'Eratosthenes' is called the father of geography. At present, geography means 'the study of spatial, temporal and variations found on the earth's surface'.

The word Geo is derived from the Sanskrit language 'jya' (ज्या). One of the 27 names of the earth mentioned in the second verse of Amarkosh- “भूः भूमि, अचला, अनन्ता, रसा, विश्वम्भरा, स्थिरा, घरा, धरित्री, धरिणी, क्षोणी, ज्या, काश्यपी, क्षितिः सर्वसहा, वसुमती, वसुधा, उर्वी, वसुंधरा, गोत्रा, कुः पृथिवी, पृथ्वी, क्ष्मा, अवनी, मेदनी, मही”। is which gives the sense of the earth from the point of view of phonology. Prithvi is described as padma form in the peace festival of Mahabharata. This is a permanent truth, which is known to Vedic mystics from the very beginning. According to Vedic literature, King Prithu Ven made the rough land cultivable, therefore the land is also called Prithvi.

Definition of Geography-

According to Richard Hartshorne- "The purpose of geography is to describe and explain the regional or regional variations of the surface".

According to Alfred Hatner- "Geography studies the difference in causally related facts in different parts of the surface".

Area of Geography- Under the subject of Geography, the interrelationships between the facts arising from the dynamic interaction between the human and physical environment are studied analytically. Geography is also called a mature science. As a subject, geography explains the natural and cultural forms found on the earth's surface. Therefore, the overall and interrelated study of changes in spatial structures is done under the subject of geography. Thus, the field of study of geography extends to military services, environment and disaster management, as well as diverse natural and social sciences.

Relationship of Geography with various sciences- Geography has a close relationship with various sciences like social and natural sciences. In the subject of Geography as a social science, a holistic and organized study of natural



and human or cultural elements is done. Today, advanced means of transportation, audio-visual media, information technology and technological development have brought the entire world closer and have enriched the data. Geography has provided great opportunities for observation and examination of natural, economic and social facts and parameters. Branches of geography like social geography, political geography, population geography, economic geography etc. have a close relation with social sciences, because spatial characteristics are found in each of them.

Geography is also related to natural sciences like geology, meteorology, hydrology such as biology, botany, ecology, etc. Because geography gets its information from these sciences. The main tool for knowing the earth is the map. The work of giving a two-dimensional form to the earth's image is possible only by projection made from a graphical or mathematical method. Therefore, for mapping, the geographer must be proficient in mathematics and art.

Approaches to Geography Studies- There are two major approaches to the approach of geography studies:

A. Sequential Approach

B. Regional Approach

A. Systematic Approach- The systematic study of the specific natural and human activities on the earth's crust that form the spatial structure is called Systematic Approach. The founder of this approach is the German geographer Alexander von Humboldt (1769-1859 AD). There are four branches of geography based on the Systematic Approach:

1. **Physical Geography-** The earth and its various parts such as land, water, air and biosphere are studied in Physical Geography.
2. **Bio and Environmental Geography-** It studies the distribution of diverse types of forests, wildlife, grasses and vegetation, human-nature relations, the quality of the biological environment and the implications of human welfare.
3. **Human Geography-** Along with the culture and population of a part of the earth's surface, social, economic and political dynamics are also studied in this branch.
4. **Geographical Methods and Techniques-** This branch includes methods and techniques of geography studies such as qualitative, quantitative and analysis of map art as well as Geographical Information System (G.I.S.), Global Information System (G.P.S.). And remote sensing is studied. Remote sensing is also enhanced

B. Regional approach- To divide the world into region or regions in a hierarchical manner and study the geographical facts of different regions altogether is called 'regional approach'. Its founder is the German geographer 'Karl Ritter' (1779-1859 AD). There are four branches of geography based on regional approach:

1. Regional Studies

2. Regional Analysis
3. Regional Development
4. Regional (Regional and Community) Planning

Importance of Physical Geography

1. The study of earth, atmosphere, which includes water system, biosphere, food chain, soil, etc. The survival of is done under physical geography. All these elements are essential for human beings.
2. Physical geography has emerged as a subject in modern times it relates to the assessment and management of natural resources.
3. The physical environment provides resources to the humans and ensure their economic and cultural development by using those resources.
4. Knowledge of the physical environment is very important for sustainable development, which shows the importance of physical geography.

Theories of the origin of the Earth- Many hypotheses related to the origin of the earth have been presented from time to time by various scholars. These theories are classified into two classes-

A. Elementary Theory

B. Modern Theory

A. Elementary Theory- As an early theory of the origin of the earth, the 'Gaseous Hypothesis' formulated by **Emmanuel Kant** in 1755, is the first theory. This hypothesis states that many round rings were separated from a hot and moving nebula, due to which the cooling of which formed various planets of the solar system, one of which is our earth. In 1796, **Laplace** amended this theory and presented his 'Niharika Hypothesis'. This hypothesis states that planets are formed from clouds of slow-moving matter. In 1900, **Chamberlain** and **Molton** told in their 'dual theory' that when a star passed near the Sun in the universe, due to its attraction power, the surface of the Sun was divided into innumerable segments. All of them started orbiting the sun and gradually due to their condensation, the earth and other planets were formed. In 1950, '**Auto Shimid**' and '**Carl Wijasker**' amended the nebula hypothesis and stated that the Sun was surrounded by a solar nebula made of hydrogen, helium and dust particles. Friction and collisions between the particles in them led to the formation of disk-shaped clouds and planets formed by specific expansion processes. Later, on the basis of this principle, an attempt was made to explain the origin and structure of the universe and the earth.

B. Modern theory- The modern theory regarding the origin and structure of the earth is called the '**Extended universe hypothesis**' or '**Big bang theory**'. In 1920, Edwin Hubble proved that the universe was expanding. The famous physicist **George Lametre** propounded the Big Bang theory in 1927 AD. According to the Big Bang theory, all the

Know this also-

- The event of Big bang happened about 13.7 billion years ago.
- Due to the Big Bang, the temperature dropped to 4500 degrees Kelvin and nuclear substances were formed.



substances from which the universe was formed were located in the same place as a small sphere. Their volume was very subtle, temperature and density was infinite. According to scientists, about 13.7 billion Years ago, due to a major explosion in a very small sphere, the expansion of the universe started, which continues even today. Expansion of the universe means the expansion of the distance between the sky and the galaxies.

Formation of stars- Initially, the gravitational force varied due to the disparity in the density and distribution of energy and matter in the universe. As a result, due to the accumulation of materials, the formation of galaxies began. These galaxies have innumerable star clusters. Galaxies are formed in the form of clouds of hydrogen and helium gas, called nebula. Many stars were formed about 5 to 6 billion Years ago from many gaseous clusters in the expanding nebula.

Formation of planets- The stars in the nebula are clusters of gases. The

Know this also-

- Light year is a measure of distance. The speed of light is three lakh kilometers per second. The distance traveled by light in one year is called light year.
- Due to the expansion of galaxies, their distance is measured in light years.

gravitational force led to the formation of clouds in these gaseous cloud clusters. A saucer was formed around the gaseous core, rotating from gas and dust particles. After this, the condensation of gaseous clouds has begun and the material covering the core has evolved

into small spheres. These small spheres evolved into planets from the fusion process. Planets were formed by many small planets.

Solar System- Niharika is considered to be the father of the solar system. The process of collapse and formation of the center of nebula is believed to have occurred about 5.6 billion BC and all the planets including the earth were formed about 4.6 to 4.56 billion Years ago. Our solar system consists of the Sun (star), 8 planets, 63 satellites, millions of asteroids (pieces of planets), comets and a large amount of dust particles and gases. Of these, Mercury, Venus, Earth and Mars are called '**inner planets**'. Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus, Neptune are called '**outer planets**'.

Know this also-

- The planets Mercury, Venus, Earth and Mars are also called 'terrestrial planets' because their surface is made of rocks and metals.
- Aryabhata said in the fourth century that the earth rotates on its axis. In his calculations, the time period of the Earth was said to be 23 hours 56 minutes 4.1 seconds.

Moon- The only satellite on earth is the moon. The moon is believed to have originated from a major collision on earth (The Big Split). A research has shown that about 4.44 billion Years ago, a celestial body called Dhaia collided with the



Earth. Due to this collision, a part of the earth broke down and started orbiting the earth in space, which was called the moon. All the planets and satellites in our solar system are illuminated by sunlight. This truth has been mentioned in many mantras of Vedic literature. In one of the Yajurveda the mantra is said- 'सुषुम्णः सूर्यरश्मिश्चन्द्रमा गन्धर्वस्तस्य नक्षत्राण्यप्सरसो भेकुरयो नाम ॥' (18.40) That is, gandharva is the moon with the most joyful and the light of the rays of the sun. Nakshatra (Bhekuri=Prabha) is his nymphs. It is also said in the Nirukta Shastra that 'अस्यैको रश्मिश्चन्द्रमसं प्रति दीप्यते तदेतेनोपेक्षितव्यम्- आदित्यतोऽस्य दीप्तिर्भवति ।' (2.2) this verse also states that the moon is illuminated by sunlight.

Concept of universe creation in Vedic literature- The theory related to creation of the universe is found in the world's oldest literature, Vedic literature. The 129th Sukta of the 10th Mandal of Rigveda is Nasadiya Sukta. Nasadiya Sukta is related to the origin of the universe. The mantra seer of this Sukta is Rishi Prajapati Parmeshthi and the deity is Bhaavrit. "नासदासीन्नो सदासीत् तदानीं नासीद्रजो नो व्योमा परो यत् । किमावरीवः कुह कस्य शर्मन्नम्भः किमासीद्बहनं गभीरम्" ॥1॥ That is, in the state of cataclysm there was neither truth nor untruth. At that time there was neither space nor any world. There was no covering material and no covering. There was neither any living being nor food nor water. "न मृत्युरासीदमृतं न तर्हि न रात्र्या अह आसीत् प्रकेतः । आनीदवातं स्वधया तदेकं तस्माद्भान्यन्न परः किं चनास" ॥2॥ That is, there was neither death nor nectar. There was neither night nor day. In such a situation, only Brahma was alive with Swadha. There was nothing more than that. "तम आसीत् तमसा गूणमग्रेऽप्रकेतं सलिलं सर्वमा इदम् । तुच्छेनाभ्वपिहितं यदासीत् तपस्तन्महिजायतैकम्" ॥3॥ That is, in the state of destruction, everything was surrounded by darkness. This entire visible world was as unknown as water. The whole world was covered with utter darkness. Through great penance, Brahma was born without the division of cause and effect. "कामस्तदग्रे समवर्तताधि मनसो रेतः प्रथमं यदासीत् । सतो बन्धुमसति निरविन्दन् हृदि प्रतीष्या कवयो मनीषा" ॥4॥ That is, the desire for creation first arose in the mind of God. That first became the seed of creation in the mind. The sages thought from the mind to the heart and searched for the cause of truth in untruth. "तिरश्चीनो विततो रश्मिरेषामधः स्विदासीद्दुपरि स्विदासीद् । रेतोधा आसन् महिमान आसन् त्वधा अवस्तात् प्रयतिः परस्तात्" ॥5॥ That is, the rays of the glory of God, who created the sky, were oblique, which were spread below, above, everywhere. The living beings carrying the seed form karma and the great sky etc. were the objects of enjoyment. At that time the food was inferior and the consumer was excellent. "को अद्वा वेद क इह प्र वोचत् कुत आजाता कुत इयं विसृष्टिः । अर्वाग्देवा अस्य विसर्जनेनाऽथा को वेद यत आबभूव" ॥6॥ That is, who knows completely and who can say about this creation? For what reasons has this creation arisen? The gods came into existence after the creation of ghosts. Who knows the source of this world? "इयं विसृष्टिर्यत आबभूव यदि वा दधे यदि वा न । यो अस्याध्यक्षः परमे व्योमन्सो अङ्ग वेद यदि वा न वेद" ॥7॥ That is, it is not known whether this special creation from whom it has originated is holding it or



not. I don't know whether the one who is in charge of this universe in the vast sky knows it or not.

Origin and evolution of the earth- We know that the earth was formed by the process of formation of many planets. In the beginning, the earth was a hot, deserted and rocky planet. As a result of some actions and events, it turned into a beautiful planet conducive to life. The structure of our earth is as layered as a lotus flower. According to Vishnu Purana, “सैषा चतुर्महाद्वीपा नानाद्वीपसमाकुला । पृथिवी कीर्तिता कृत्स्ना पद्माकारा मया द्विजाः ॥ तदेषा सान्तरद्वीपा सशैलवनकानना । पद्मेत्यभिहिता कृत्स्ना पृथिवी बहुविस्तरा” ॥ (41.86, 87) The earth is full of four continents and many small islands. In the same way, it/she is surrounded by mountains, forests and forests. Due to being a kamlakar, the earth is called Padma. The distribution of substances from the outer part of the atmosphere to the center of the earth is not uniform. The density of the substances in the atmosphere is the lowest. There are many circles from the surface of the earth to the inner part and different characteristics of the substances found in them.

Evolution of the Lithosphere- At the time of the origin of the earth, the substances condensing by the force of gravity were affected by the organizing bodies. The substance began to melt down due to the immense energy and heat generated by this continuous process. Due to the excessive heat, heavy substances came to the center of the earth and light matter came to the surface. Gradually, cold and solid and converted into particles and developed crust. Due to The Big Split, the temperature and energy of the earth increased once again. By the process of differentiation, the earth's matter was divided into several layers such as crust, mantle and core.

Evolution of the Atmosphere- The evolution of the atmosphere on the earth has taken place in three phases. In the first phase, the atmosphere containing high amount of hydrogen and helium was removed from the earth due to solar winds. In the second phase, steam and water vapor emanating from the earth due to differentiation contributed to the development of the atmosphere. In the third step, photosynthesis of the biosphere purified the atmosphere. Nitrogen and oxygen gases are major contributors to the third stage atmosphere structure.

Evolution of the hydrosphere- In the third stage atmosphere, oxygen was low while water vapor, nitrogen, methane, ammonia and carbon dioxide were high. Through the emission process, the gases inside the earth started coming to the ground. Due to continuous volcanic eruptions on the earth, water vapor and gases started increasing in the atmosphere. Now with the freezing earth, water vapor in the atmosphere was beginning to condense. As a result, due to excessive rainfall, rainwater started accumulating in the earth's troughs, which led to the formation of seas, oceans, lakes, etc. Before the oxygen was increasing by photosynthesis, the ocean was again filled with our atmosphere. The last stage of the origin of the earth is considered to be related to the origin and development



of life. Scientists believe that the origin of life on Earth is the result of a chemical reaction. About 380 million Years ago, one-celled bacteria are believed to have started life on earth. Human evolution on earth is believed to have occurred from about 20 to 50 million Years ago.

Question

Multiple Choice Questions-

1. The word geography was first used by-
A. Galileo B. Aristotle C. Eratosthenes D. Herodotus
2. Names are given to the earth is Amarkosh-
A. 13 B. 22 C. 27 D. 33
3. The Systematic Approach is-
A. Alexander von Humboldt B. Carl Ritter
C. Molton D. Charles Darwin
4. The Exponent of the Northwest Zodiac Hypothesis is-
A. Carl Lyle B. Carl Ritter
C. Molton D. Emmanuel Kant
5. The formulation of the Big Bang theory was done by-
A. George Lametre B. Karl Marx
C. Molton D. Herodotus

Write the true/false-

1. The originator of the regional approach to geography is 'Carl Ritter'.
(True/False)
2. In 1796 AD, Laplace gave the 'Niharika Hypothesis'.
(True/False)
3. The dual theory was given by Chamberlain and Molton.
(True/False)
4. George Lametre propounded the Big Bang theory
(Truth/False)

Fill in the blanks-

1. The formulation of Gaseous Hypothesis was done in.....
(1755 AD/1780 AD)
2. Formulation of niharika hypothesis..... Was done. (1796 AD/1833 AD)
3. Formulation of the dualistic theory Was done. (1900 /1914 AD)
4. Formulation of Big Bang Theory.....Was done. (1927 /1945 AD)

Match the correct pair-

1. The universe began to expand about 5 to 6 billion Years ago.
2. Many stars were formed b. About 4.6 billion Years ago
3. Planets were formed about 4.44 billion Years ago.
4. The moon originated about 13.7 billion Years ago.

Very short answer questions-

1. Who is called the father of geography?



-
2. What is a sequential approach?
 3. What is regional approach?
 4. What is earthly planet?
 5. When did human beings develop on earth?

Short Answer Questions-

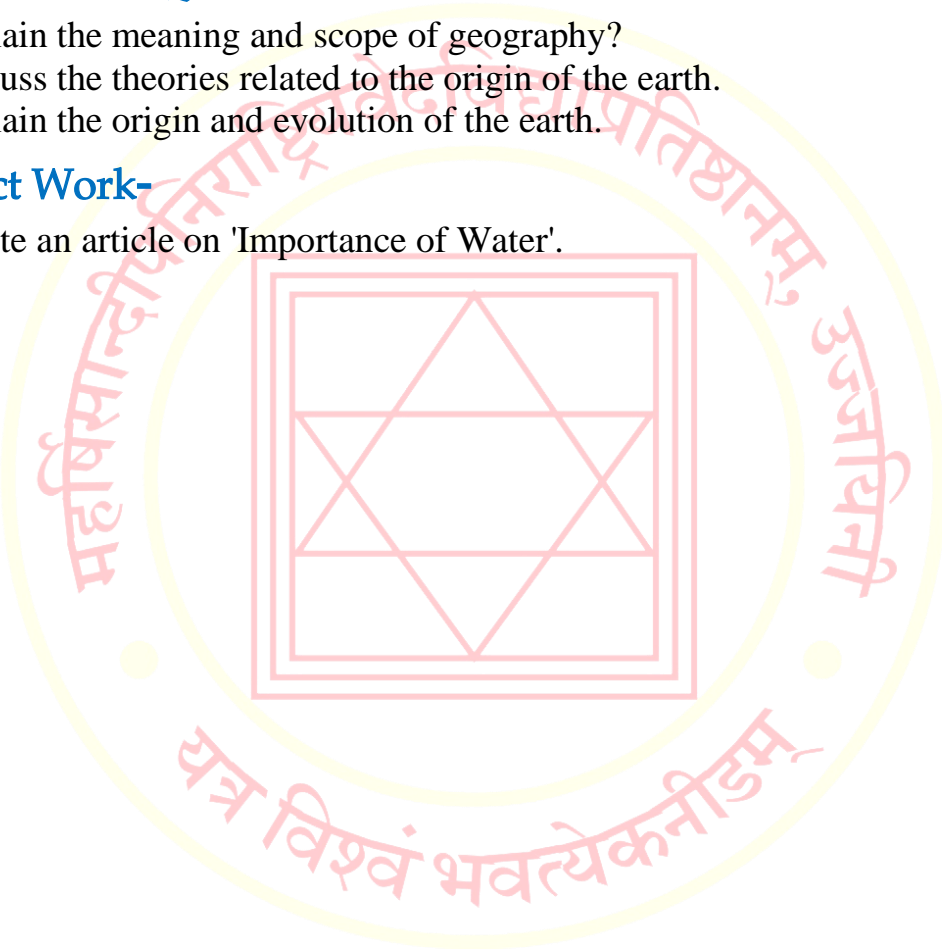
1. Mention the importance of physical geography.
2. Explain the initial theory of the origin of the earth.
3. Explain our solar system formation.
4. Write a brief note on the origin of the moon.

Long Answer Questions-

1. Explain the meaning and scope of geography?
2. Discuss the theories related to the origin of the earth.
3. Explain the origin and evolution of the earth.

Project Work-

1. Write an article on 'Importance of Water'.



Chapter-2

Structure of the Earth

In this chapter- internal structure of the earth, sources of geological knowledge, endogenous processes, exogenous processes, soil formation, minerals, rocks, theory of continental drift, development of ocean floor, plate tectonic theory, movement of the Indian plate, various descriptions of the earth in Vedic literature. Islands and oceans.

Earth was a hot, uninhabited and rocky planet at the time of its origin. There was an excess of hydrogen and oxygen gas in the atmosphere. Gradually, after space events and chemical reactions, an environment conducive to life was created on earth. In this sequence, many types of minerals were formed on the earth along with the development of water, air and lithosphere, natural environment and life.

Internal structure of the earth- There is a thick layer of rocks on the earth's surface. This form of the earth is the result of continuous external and internal geological processes. These processes are related to the internal structure of the earth. The inner structure of the earth is as layered as a lotus flower, which is divided into three parts-

1. **Crust-** The uppermost and solid part of the earth is called the earth's crust. It is made up of silica and alumina, so it is also called Si-Al.
2. **Mantle-** This is the lower part of the earth's crust. Due to its formation consisting of silica (si) and magnesium (mg), it is called si-ma. The landmass is formed by combining the landstone and the mantle.
3. **Core-** It is made up of nickel and ferrus. Therefore, it is also called Ni-Fe in short. This core also has two parts - external and internal core.

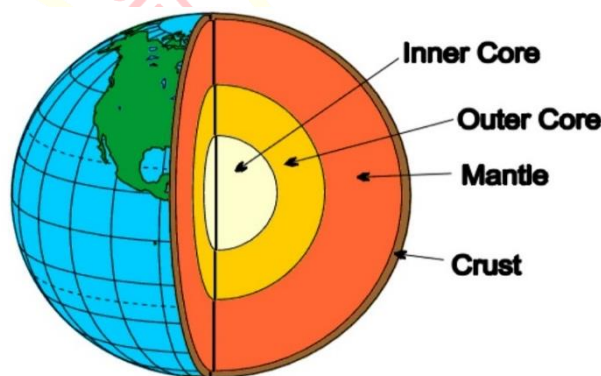


Fig. 2.1 - Internal Structure Of The Earth

Sources of geological knowledge- The radius of the earth is 6370 kilometers and the internal temperature is about 6000° Celsius. Therefore, it is difficult to reach its center and conduct an internal inspection. But scientists have learned many facts about the structure of the earth. There are two major sources of geologic knowledge-

(A) Direct Sources (B) Indirect Sources.

A. Direct Sources- Mining and volcanic eruptions are the major direct sources of knowledge of the earth's internal state.

1. **Mining-** There are solids and rocks available in the earth's lithosphere, which we obtain by mining. The structure of the geology is studied by observation and analysis of these substances and rocks. In addition,

deep sea exploration and integrated ocean penetration projects are being undertaken by scientists. The analysis of the materials obtained in this excavation has yielded many important knowledge about the internal structure of the earth.

2. **Volcanoes-** Volcanoes are the places from where substances like gas, ash, rocks, etc. in the form of lava come out from inside

Know this also-

- The deepest penetration so far has been done at a place called Kola in the Arctic Ocean to a depth of 12 km.
- Gold mines in South Africa 3-4 km. till deep. It is not possible to go deeper than this because the temperature increases with the penetration goes deep down increase in depth.

Know this also-

- Magma is the molten form of rocks that forms beneath the Earth's surface.
- The ejected form of magma is called lava.

the earth and come to the ground. Scientists analyze them and try to know the internal structure of the earth. The main types of volcanoes based on the shapes formed from volcanic eruptions are as follows- i. Shield Volcano ii. Mixed volcanoes iii. Volcanic counds iv. Basalt flow zone v. Cuttack Volcano

- Shield Volcano-** Shield volcano is huge and flat shaped similar to dome or shield. It is formed due to the freezing of liquid basaltic lava. The slope of this volcano is not high. When the shield comes out of the volcano in the form of a fountain, a cone is formed at its mouth, which is called cinder or bhasma cone. The volcanoes of the Island of Hawaii are the best examples of this.
- Mixed volcanoes-** Mixed volcanoes are fierce eruptions. Along with the release of thick lava from them, a large amount of flammable material and ash reaches the ground. They accumulate around the exhaust tube in the form of layers. Italy's Visuvius volcano is the best example of this.
- Volcanic counds-** These are the most intense eruption volcanoes. Due to the rapid eruption at the time of its eruption, these volcanoes themselves collapse and form coils, which are called volcanic cunds. The world's largest volcano Kund (Caldera) is Japan's 'Aso'.

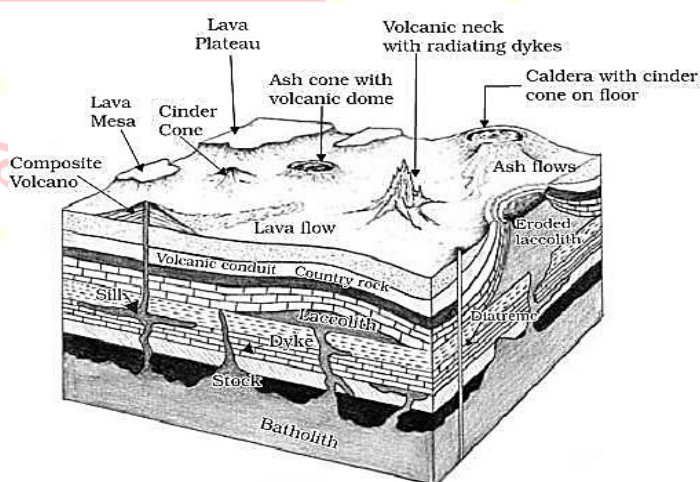


Fig. 2.1- Volcanic Landforms

-
- iv. **Basalt flow zone-** When a large amount of liquid lava comes out of the volcano and spreads over a large area, such an area is called basalt flow zone. The south trap region of India is formed from a similar volcano.
- v. **Cuttack Volcano-** Cuttack volcano originates in the oceans. Cuttack is a chain spread over a 70,000 km long central oceanic region, spanning all oceanic basins. Here the volcano continues to rise.

Volcanic Landforms- Volcanic rocks are formed when the lava emanating from the volcanic eruption reaches the ground and cools down. When lava cools down under the ground, many types of interstitial landforms such as balothic, lacothic, are formed.

B. Indirect sources- This includes the analysis of the properties of matter, the study of meteors, gravity, magnetic fields, earthquake-related activities, etc. Let's learn about earthquakes.

Earthquakes- The main indirect source of knowledge of geology is seismic

Know this also-

- The branch of science in which earthquakes are studied is called seismology. Earthquake waves are studied with the help of an instrument called a seismograph.
- The speed of earthquake waves is measured by the Richter scale. It has a value from 0 to 9. An earthquake whose value is 7 on the Richter scale is considered a destructive earthquake.
- The speed of earthquake waves is also measured by the Mercalli scale. The Mercalli scale has values from 1 to 12.

activities. Through these we get a complete picture of the different layers of the earth. Earthquake means 'trembling in the earth'. There are deep cracks (faults) in the rocks of the earth's crust inside the earth. Rocks on either side of the fault move in opposite directions. In this process, the upper rocks exert pressure downwards and the friction between them keeps them bound to each other,

but at the time of tendency of the rocks to separate, due to less effect of friction on them, the rocks move in the opposite direction. Due to this, energy is released in the form of earthquake waves, which move in all directions. The place where energy is released is called the 'origin centre' of the earthquake and the point closest to it is called the 'epicentre'. All earthquakes originate from a depth of 200 km below the Earth's surface.

Seismic waves- Generally, seismic waves are of two types - 'geological waves' and 'surface waves'. **Geological waves** flow in all parts of the earth and in all directions. There are two types of geological stars - P triangle and S star. P waves reach the surface of the earth earlier. These solids, liquids and gases remain dynamic in all three mediums. S waves reach the surface of the earth after some time. These waves remain moving only in a solid medium. **Surface waves** are formed when they come in contact with the surface rock. The velocity of these waves depends on the density of the substances.



Types of Earthquakes- mainly there are five types of earthquakes-

- i. **Tectonic earthquakes-** Tectonic earthquakes occur due to the sliding of rocks along the surface.
- ii. **Volcanic earthquakes-** Volcanic earthquakes that occur in volcanic areas are called volcanic earthquakes.
- iii. **Niyat earthquakes-** Light tremors of earthquakes due to excessive mining in mining areas are called niyat earthquakes.
- iv. **Explosion earthquakes-** Explosion earthquakes are the vibrations that occur on the ground due to chemical and nuclear explosions.
- v. **Dam borne earthquakes-** Earthquakes occurring in large dam areas are called dam-borne earthquakes.

Effects of Earthquake- Earthquake is a natural disaster. Due to this, incidents like landslides, avalanches, floods etc. occur. When there is an earthquake center in the ocean floor, sea storms occur. Earthquakes cause huge loss of public money due to the collapse of dams and buildings. Earthquakes of magnitude greater than 5 on the Richter scale are more destructive.

Geomorphic Processes- The formation of a crust is a dynamic process. It continues to move in horizontal and vertical directions. The earth's surface is influenced by the 'innate forces' generated inside the earth and the 'emitted forces' induced by the energy received from the

Know this also-

- Most earthquakes in the world occur in the Pacific Ocean.
- Asia is the continent with the most earthquakes in the world and Australia is the continent with the least earthquakes.
- Japan is the country with the most earthquakes.
- Himachal Pradesh is the most earthquake prone area in India.
- Peninsula India is the safest region from the point of view of earthquakes.

sun. The innate forces are the forces that form the earth's shape. The excavatory force causes friction of emerging landforms and filling of low areas. The reduction of the difference between the pronunciations on the ground by erosion is called 'bottom balance'. The changes in the configuration of the earth's crust due to physical pressure and chemical reactions by innate and exogenous forces on surface materials are called geomorphic processes. They are divided into two parts -

A. Ingenuity Processes B. External Processes.

A. Ingenuity Processes- Processes that are driven by the internal energy of the earth within the earth's crust are called '**ingenuity processes**'. Surface deformation and volcanism are such processes.

Surface Deformation- All the processes that form, operate and uplift the surface are collectively called surface deformation. Due to this, there is a transformation in the rocks.



Volcanism- Volcanic activity involves the movement of molten rocks or lava towards the surface and the formation of many internal and external volcanic site forms.

B. Excitatory Processes- The processes which are aided by the gradient generated by tectonic factors driven by the sun and atmospheric energy on the ground and controlled by the innate forces are called '**excitatory processes**'. Weathering, mass movement, landslides, erosion and deposition are such processes. All the exogenous geomorphic processes are also called covering. The density, type and distribution of vegetation on the ground mainly depend on rainfall and temperature, which have a direct impact on the excavated geomorphic processes.

- **Weathering-** Physical, chemical and biological process in the form of exogenous process is called 'weathering'. Due to this, rocks or rocks keep breaking down at one place. Climate has the greatest impact on the process of weathering. Physical weathering processes depend on applied forces such as gravity, expansion, etc. Chemical processes such as hydration, carbonation and oxidation etc. speed up the weathering process. Salt spreads due to chemical process in rocks. As a biological process, weathering involves animals, plants and humans.

Due to weathering, small pieces of rocks help in soil formation. It helps in concentration of metals like iron, manganese, copper etc. Other substances are treated by weathering and collected in one place as minerals. The process of weathering is also helpful in erosion, large erosion, miniaturization of the refractory.

- **Erosion and Deposition-** The natural process in which the materials released due to fragmentation of rocks are transferred by water, wind, etc. is called '**erosion**'. In the process of erosion, rocks, soil etc. are eroded by flowing water streams, glaciers, underground water, wind and flow from one place to another. The process of accumulation of eroded material is called '**deposition**'. Hence the result of erosion is deposition. Where the slope decreases, the eroded material begins to accumulate there, due to which new landforms are formed.
- **Mass movement-** In the process of mass movement, due to the influence of Gravity, a large amount of soil, sand and rocks start to be transferred according to the gradient. There are two types of mass movements - slow and fast movement. The movement of materials in the movement of the earth is so slow that we can get the impression of it only through long-term supervision. The phenomena of intense circulation



Fig 2.2- Landslides

occur on low to intense slopes in climatic regions. Soil flow, mud flow and debris are fast movements.

- **Landslides-** Landslides are the movement of soil or rocks due to surface movements. In this process, materials like soil, rocks, debris, etc. move towards the shield and move from one place to another. Landslides occur due to earthquakes, floods, volcanoes, gravity, human intervention, etc.

Soil Formation- Soil on our surface is such a set of natural elements that have the potential to nourish organisms. Physical, chemical and biological activities continue continuously in soil formation. Therefore, soil is called a moving medium. Climate conditions, landforms and vegetation have a huge impact on the soil. The five main factors for soil formation are:

1. **Rocks-** The major factor affecting soil formation is the basic substance or rock. Different types of soil depend on the weathering of rocks.
2. **Topography-** The layer of soil in the strong slope or hilly areas is thin and in the plains there is a thick layer of soil.
3. **Climate-** The main factor affecting the weathering of native rocks is climate. Due to excess rainfall, the amount of humus in the soil increases, but due to heavy rainfall, there is a loss of fertile soil.
4. **Biological activities-** The flora and micro-organisms covered on the land together make the soil more fertile.
5. **Time-** The time taken in soil formation is a major factor. Soil formed over a long period of time is more fertile.

Minerals- About 98% of the earth's crust is made up of eight elements called oxygen, silicon, aluminum, iron, calcium, sodium, potassium, magnesium. The remaining 2% is made up of titanium, hydrogen, phosphorus, manganese, sulfur, carbon, nickel and other substances. These elements found on the earth combine with various other elements to form new substances, which are called minerals. A mineral is formed consisting of two or more elements. Unipolar minerals like sulfur, copper, silver, gold, graphite are also found. Minerals are found in the solid state on the outer surface of the earth and in the hot and melting state in the inner layer. The process of extracting minerals from rocks buried in the inner layer is called mining. About 2000 types of minerals have been identified and designated on the earth's crust.

The major minerals found in the crust are formed by natural processes and have a certain chemical composition. These solids, liquids and gases are found in all three states. The characteristics of some of the major minerals are as follows-

Feldspar- The base part of the earth's crust is made from this and it is light pink and light white in color. It is used in making glass and porcelain.

Quartz- It is axial, colorless, transparent and hard. It is the second most abundant mineral on the earth's crust after Felspar.

Mica- It accounts for 4% of the land. It contains a mixture of potassium, aluminum, magnesium, iron, silica, etc.

Apart from these, minerals like olivine, pyroxene, chlorite, calcite, hematite, bauxite, barite, magnetite etc. are also found in the rocks.

Types of minerals- Minerals are broadly divided into two parts-

1. **Metallic minerals-** Minerals that contain metallic elements such as gold, silver, copper, lead, zinc, iron, tin, bauxite, cobalt, nickel, platinum etc.
2. **Non-metallic minerals-** Minerals that do not contain metallic elements, such as marble, limestone, mica, potash, sulfur, granite, sandstone, coal etc.

Rock- The earth's crust has been formed by various rocks. Rock is formed consisting of one or more minerals. On the basis of the construction method, rocks are divided into three types-

1. Igneous Rock 2. Sedimentary Rock 3. Transformed rock

1. **Igneous Rock** - When lava and magma emanating from volcanoes in the inner part of the earth become cold and solid, it is called igneous rock. Igneous rocks are also called primary or maternal rocks. Granite, basalt, pegmatite, etc. are igneous rocks.
2. **Sedimentary rocks-** Rocks on the earth's surface are deposited away from weathering. The rocks formed due to layer by layer freezing by the process of deposition are called sedimentary or layered rocks. Sandstone, limestone, salt, coal, shell cucumber etc. are sedimentary rocks.
3. **Metamorphic rocks-** Those igneous or sedimentary rocks which change due to heat, pressure and chemical reactions are called metamorphic or transformed rocks. Marble, gneiss, quartz, cyanite, granite, slate etc. are metamorphic rocks.

Rock Cycle - Rock cycle is a continuous process. In the process of rock cycle, the old rocks change from their original form and take a new form. Sedimentary rocks are formed due to the cover of igneous rocks and metamorphic rocks due to high temperature and pressure. Sedimentary rocks are formed by fractions obtained from igneous and metamorphic rocks. Sedimentary rocks can be converted into subdivisions. These subdivisions can also be sources of formation of sedimentary rocks. Rocks formed on the earth's surface can move to the interior of the earth due to reversion, where they are re-converted into magma due to rising temperature.

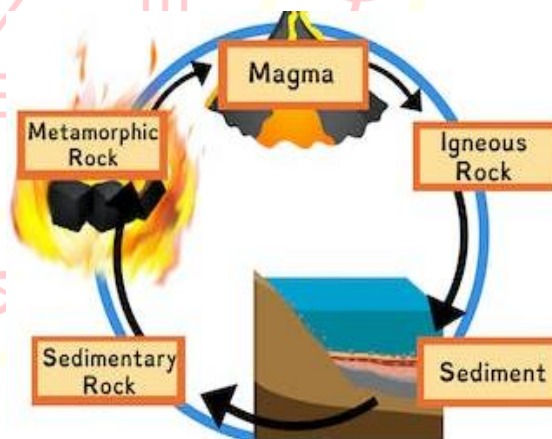


Fig. 2.3 - Rock cycle

Formation of continents and oceans- 29% of the Earth is covered with land and 71% is covered with water. The present continents and oceans on Earth were formed about 3.8 billion years ago. Many scientists have found in their studies that all the continents and oceans of today were the same in the initial

period of formation. Scientists have called the land area of that period as '**Pangeia**' and the huge body of water (ocean) spread around it as '**Panthalasa**'. Many theories have been given regarding the formation and development of continents and oceans on Earth, of which 3 popular theories are- 1. Continental Drift Theory 2. Development of Ocean Floor 3. Plate Tectonic Theory.

Continental Drift Theory- In 1912, Alfred Wegener in his 'Continental Displacement Theory' recognized that all the continents of today were part of the same land about 300 million Years ago. Wegener has named it 'Pangaea'. About 300 million Years ago, parts of Pangea began to slide towards the equator. The division of Pangaea led to the emergence of two large continental landmasses- Laresia (northern land) and Gondwana land (southern land). About 5-6 million Years ago, Laresia and Gondwana lands were divided into several sections and took the shape of present-day continents.

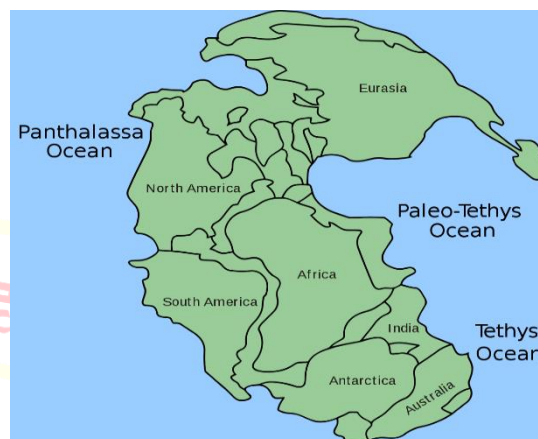


Fig- 2.4 'Pangaea' and 'Panthalasa'

India is part of this Gondwana land. Wegener attributed the first cause of continental displacement to the polar flying force, which is related to the rotation of the earth. The second reason is the 'tidal force', which is related to the attraction of the sun and the moon. Arthur Holmes explained his convection current theory in 1928 that due to the temperature variation generated by radioactive elements in the ground, the conductive currents produced in the mantle are moving as a mechanism, which speeds the plates.

Evidence of displacement of continents-

- i. Similarities in the coastlines of continents indicate continental displacement.
- ii. The similarity in the age of rocks currently located across and across the oceans suggests that in the past both continents were the same.
- iii. The patterns of sedimentary rocks formed from glacier deposits found in six different land parts of the Southern Hemisphere are evidenced by their association in ancient times.
- iv. On some continents, the remains of such organisms and flora are found, which are not currently found in that place.

Development of Ocean Floor- In 1961, Henry Hayes presented the theory of the development of the oceanic bed. He said that continuous volcanic eruption at the top of the oceanic ridges led to the differentiation in the oceanic crust. The lava emanating from the volcano is filling the cracks of the crust and pushing the oceanic crust to both sides. If a new crust is being formed by volcanic eruptions in central oceanic ridges, on the other hand, crust is also destroyed in the oceanic troughs.

Distribution of earthquakes and volcanoes- There are three major areas of earthquakes and volcanoes on earth- the first region is a series of earthquakes and volcanoes going parallel to the coastline in the central part of the Atlantic Ocean to the Indian Ocean. The second region lies in the alpine to Himalayan ranges and the Pacific oceanic coasts. The third region is located as a ring of fire along the Pacific Ocean.

Plate tectonic theory- In 1967 AD, Mackenzie, Parker and Morgan introduced the plate tectonic theory. A large earth mass of solid and irregular shape, consisting of continental and oceanic landmasses, is called a plate. These plates are moving horizontally as a firm unit on the debilitating zone. A plate can be called an oceanic or continental plate based on its connectivity. Their thickness can be up to 5-100 km in oceanic areas and up to 200 km in continental areas.

Plate Boundary- Three types of plate boundaries are formed due to the constantly moving plates. When two plates are separated from each other in opposite direction and a new crust is formed, it is called the diffuse boundary, such as the Mid-Atlantic Cutoff. In the convergence range, two plates come close to each other. Due to one plate being pressed downwards of another plate, the earth's crust there destroys and creates an entry zone, such as Pacific Oceanic and American plates. When two vertical plates are not formed or destroyed even after moving horizontally alongside each other, they are called transform limits.

Know this also-

- There are seven main plates on the lithosphere- Antarctic Plate, North American Plate, South American Plate, Pacific Ocean Plate, Indo-Australian Plate, Africa Plate, and Eurasian Plate.
- Other minor plates are Cocos Plate, Nazca Plate, Arabian Plate, Philippine Plate, Caroline Plate, and Fiji Plate.

Indian plate movement- The Indian plate includes peninsular India and the continent of Australia. India was located in the ocean as a huge island off the Australian coast. Between Asia and India was the Tethys Sea. After the partition of Pangea 200 million Years ago, India moved north and hit the continent of Asia 4-5 million Years ago and the Himalayas were formed. At the same time, the south trap was formed due to lava flow. The special thing is that even then India was close to the equator.

Various islands and seas of the earth in Vedic literature- In Vedic literature, the islands and seas of the earth are mentioned. Atharvaveda is said in a mantra “तिस्रो दिवस्त्रिः पृथिवीस्त्रीण्यन्तरिक्षाणि चतुरः समुद्रान्।” (अथर्व.19.27.3) in this mantras mention has three sections of the earth and four seas based on the earth. In Patanjali yogasutras (Vyasa commentary) has a called 'Saptadwipa Vasumati'. In the Agni Purana, seven islands have been mentioned “जम्बूद्वीपश्चात् द्वीपौ शाल्मलिश्चापरो महान्। कुशः क्रौञ्चस्तथा शाकः पुष्करश्चेति सप्तमः” ॥ (108.1) Jambu, Plaksha, Shalmali, Kush, Crouncha, Shak and Pushkar are the seven islands on earth. In a mantra of Rigveda, two



oceans have been described in the east and west of the earth, 'उभौ समुद्रावा क्षेत्रे यश्च पूर्व उतापरः'। (10.136.5) in the 47th Sukta of this mandala, it is called "चतुःसमुद्रं धरुणं रयीणाम्" (10.47.2) in this richa, Indra is described as the one who fills the four seas with water. This confirms the presence of four seas on earth. In the chapter called Ganbheda of Agni Purana, the names of the seven seas are mentioned as follows-

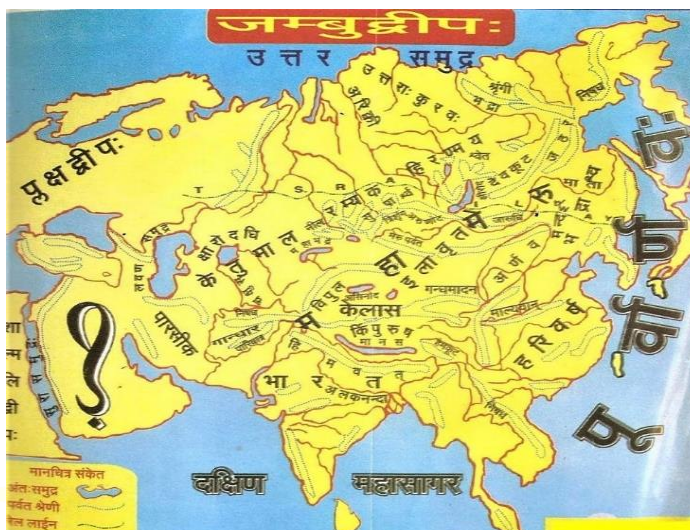


Figure-2.5 Jambudweep

‘लवणः क्षीरसंज्ञश्च घृतोदो दधिसंज्ञकः।

सुरोदेक्षुरसोदो च स्वादूदः सप्तमो भवेत्॥ चत्वारः सागराः ख्याताः पुष्करिण्यश्च ताः स्मृताः’॥ That is, salts, ksheer, ghritha, dadhi, sura, ikshuras and swadhu are the seven seas. The famous four huge seas are also called Pushkarini.

Question

Multiple Choice Questions -

- The radius of the earth is approximately kilometers.
 - 5380
 - 6370
 - 7280
 - 4678
- The deepest oceanic observation has ever been done on the in
 - Arctic Ocean
 - Pacific Ocean
 - Indian Ocean
 - South Arabian Sea
- The world's largest volcano Caldera is in
 - Aso B of Japan
 - Visuvius of Italy
 - Monolooa of the Island Of Hawaii
 - Kilmanjaro of Tanzania
- Example of the inference process is
 - Volcanic
 - Erosion
 - Weathering
 - All of The Above
- Metallic minerals from the following are
 - Marble
 - Bauxite
 - Limestone
 - All of The Above
- 'The Continental Displacement Theory'. Has been given by
 - Alfred Wegener
 - J. S. Mil
 - Adam Smith
 - Mckenzie

Fill in the blanks-

- The internal temperature of the earth is..... degree Celsius (6000/8000)
- Types of mines have been identified on the earth's crust



(2000/4000)

3. Sedimentary rocks can bein to Subdivisions. (Converted/returned)
4. Plate deformation is a process. (Introverted/Exogenous)

Write the true/ false-

1. Mica is a metallic type of mineral. (True/False)
2. Geo-crust is a dynamic process. (True/False)
3. Minerals are produced by natural processes. (True/False)
4. Metal is found in non-metallic minerals. (True/False)

Match the correct pair-

- | | |
|----------------|-----------------------|
| 1. Volcanology | A. Continent |
| 2. Weathering | B. Ocean |
| 3. Pangea | C. Accrual process |
| 4. Panthelasa | D. Intangible Process |

Very short answer questions

1. What is a volcano?
2. How many types of seismic waves are there?
3. In which book 'Saptadwipa Vasumati' is mentioned?
4. How many types of rocks are there?
5. What is a mineral?

Short Answer Questions-

1. Explain briefly the internal structure of the earth.
2. What do you mean by landslide? Give the main reasons for this.
3. Name and characteristics of the major minerals found in the crust.
4. Write a brief note on the rock cycle.
5. Clearly mention the theory of evolution of the oceanic crust.

Long Answer Questions-

1. Explain soil formation and its formation factors in detail.
2. Mention the plot tectonic theory.
3. According to Vedic literature, mention the various islands and seas of the earth.

Project Work-

1. Collect samples of different types of rocks and discuss their properties and religions on a physical basis.



Chapter-3

Atmosphere

In this chapter- description of atmosphere in Vedic literature, composition of atmosphere, structure of atmosphere, solar radiation, heating and cooling of atmosphere, temperature, atmospheric circulation, wind, air masses, water in the atmosphere, clouds or clouds.

Description of atmosphere in Vedic literature- Air is considered to be the basis for the life of all living beings in the world. It is a provider of vitality. Twenty names of air are mentioned in Amarkosh- “श्वसनः स्पर्शनः वायुर्मातरिश्वा सदागतिः । पृषदश्चो गन्धवहो गन्धवाहानिलाशुगा । समीरमारुतमरुज्जगत्प्राणसमीरणाः । नभस्वद्वातपवनपवमानप्रभञ्जनाः” । (122-125) That is, “respiration, sparshan, vayu, matrishva, sadagati, prishadashva, gandvaha, anil, ashuga, samer, marut, marut, jagatpraan, samiran, nabhasvan, vata, pawan, pavman, prabhanjan”. Air is also considered as the brother of water. Because it combines with water to form a cloud, which is the factor of rain. In Vedic literature the sages have called air the god of space. “सूर्यो नो दिवस्यातु वातो अन्तरिक्षात् । अग्निर्नः पार्थिवेभ्यः” । (ऋ.10.158.1) in this richa, the sage is praying that the sun protects us from heavenly disturbance, air from the disturbance of the sky and fire from the disturbance of the earth. “चन्द्रमा मनसो जातश्चक्षोः सूर्यो अजायत । मुखादिन्द्रश्चाग्निश्च प्राणाद्वायुरजायत” । (ऋ.10.90.13) in this richa, the origin of air is said to be from the life of a great man. Only through the flow of air we can feel the air. It is mentioned in the Rigveda that, “नियुत्वान् वायवा गह्वरं शुक्रो अयामि ते” । (2.41.2) that means, Hey Vayu! You come with your vehicle (assigned). Here the meaning of the word Niyut which definitely remains with Vayu. Hence, by Niyuta we can understand the air containing various gases necessary for life.

Composition of the atmosphere- The cover of air above the earth is called ‘atmosphere’. The atmosphere is made up of water vapor and dust particles in addition to various gases. The gases necessary for the life of all living beings and plants – nitrogen, oxygen, argon, carbon dioxide, neon etc. are found in the atmosphere. Various types of gases are present in the air around us. 99% air forms the major component of the total mass of the Earth, which is about 32 km from the Earth's surface. Situated at a height of. The table gives details of the gases found in the lower part of the atmosphere. The proportion of gases present in the atmosphere keeps changing as we move upwards. For example, 120 km from the earth's surface. Oxygen becomes

Table- 3.1		
Stable Gases of the Atmosphere		
Component	Formula	Mass %
Nitrogen	N ₂	78.8
Oxygen	O ₂	20.95
Argon	Ar	0.93
Carbon Dioxide	CO ₂	0.036
Neon	Ne	0.002
Helium	He	0.0005
Crypto	Kr	0.001
Xenon	Xe	0.00009
Hydrogen	H	0.00005



extremely low at altitude. 90 km Carbon dioxide and water vapor are found only up to this height. The second important component of our atmosphere is ozone, which is 10 to 50 km from the earth's surface. It is found up to a height of. It prevents harmful ultraviolet rays emanating from the Sun from reaching the Earth. Water vapor in the atmosphere is a variable gas that decreases with altitude. Its quantity decreases from the equator towards the poles. Water vapor partially absorbs the heat emitted from the Sun and stores the earth's heat, due to which the earth's temperature remains normal. There are small dust particles in the lower part of the atmosphere, which are formed by the breakdown of sea salt, fine soil, pollen, dust and meteors. Water vapor condenses around these salt and dust particles and forms clouds.

Structure of atmosphere- Atmosphere is made up of layers of varying density and temperature. They have five levels- 1. Troposphere 2. Stratosphere 3. Middle zone 4. Ionosphere 5. Exosphere. On average, the troposphere extends to an

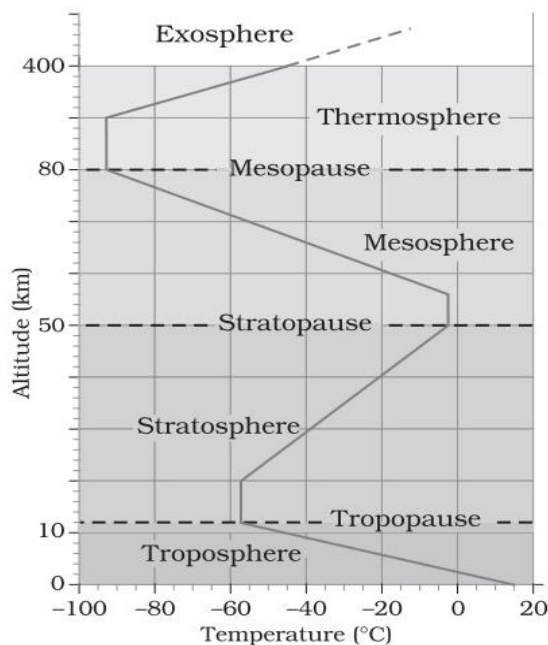


Figure-3.1 Structure of the Atmosphere

altitude of 8 km above the earth's surface at the poles in our atmosphere and up to a height of 18 km on the equator. There is an excess of dust and water vapor in this layer. Weather related events occur in the troposphere. At this level, the temperature decreases by 10 cm per 165 meters altitude. The stratosphere extends up to 50 km above the troposphere. The part that separates the troposphere and the stratosphere is called the tropopause. The temperature in the stratosphere remains the same. Airplanes fly in this layer. The ozone layer is part of the stratosphere. In the Rigveda, the ozone layer is called the important one, which is a stable and thick layer. “महत् तदुल्बं स्थविरं तदासीत्। येनाविष्टितः प्रविवेशिथापः” ॥ (10.51.1) in atharvaveda, its

color is described as golden. It protects all the creatures of the earth, protects the fetus like a membrane- “तस्योत जायमानस्य-उल्ब आसीद् हिरण्ययः। (4.2.8) ‘Mahat Ulb’ protects the living beings of the earth, like a protective membrane of the fetus. Hence ‘Mahat Ulab’ can be considered as ozone layer.

The middle division extends from 50 to 80 km. At an altitude of 80 km, the temperature becomes -100° Celsius. The middle circle upper layer is called the middle boundary. The ionosphere extends from an altitude of 80 to 400 km. electrically charged particles are found in this sphere, which are called ions. Radio waves sent from earth return from this level. Here the temperature starts increasing as the height increases. The uppermost layer of the atmosphere is the

exosphere. All the components in this division are found in a sparse state. Very little information is available about the exosphere.

The sun is the only source of natural energy on the earth. The earth spreads the energy received from the sun back into space. That is why the surface of the earth is neither too hot nor cold for a long time. Due to different temperatures in all parts of the earth, the atmospheric pressure is also different. For this reason, heat is transferred by the winds. Most of the energy received at the bottom comes in the form of short wavelengths.

Know this also-

- The surface temperature of the Sun is 6000° Celsius.

Solar Radiation- The sun radiates heat around in space, which is called solar radiation. Solar radiation is the electrical and magnetic radiation on earth that we receive in the form of light and heat. Due to the 'earth's shape', the rays of the sun fall diagonally on the earth's atmosphere, due to which the earth receives very little of solar energy. This small energy received by the earth from the sun is called suryatapa. The Sun is at its highest distance from the Earth on July 4 (152 million km), this condition is called aphelion. The sun is closest to the earth on January 3 (147 million km), this position is called perihelion.

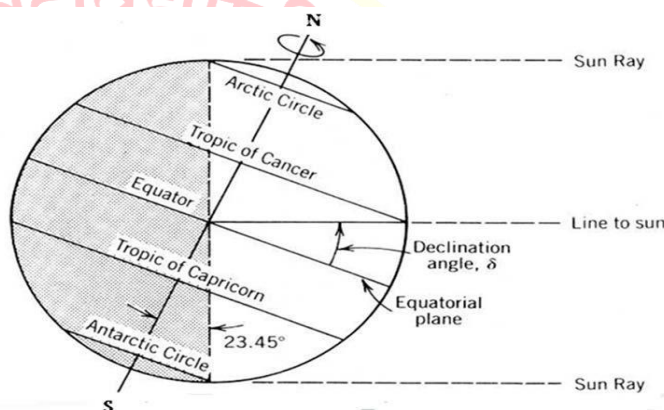


Fig. 3.2 Solstice

There is a daily, monthly and annual change in insolation. The reason for this is the rotation of the earth, the rays of the sun falling on the earth, the duration of the day, the transparentness of the atmosphere, the location configuration, etc.

Heating and cooling of the atmosphere- The atmosphere is hot and cold in many ways. There are three main processes of heating and cooling of the atmosphere- 1. Conduction 2. Convection 3. Advection 4. Terrestrial radiation.

Know this also -

- Due to the scattering of light in the atmosphere, the sun appears red at the time of rising and setting and the color of the sky appears blue.
- Maximum insolation on the ground is received in sub-tropical deserts.

Solar radiation heats the earth. The earth transmits heat through waves in the atmosphere near its surface. For this reason, the air coming in contact with the earth also gradually gets hot. The heating of the upper layers when exposed to the lower hot layers is called conduction. The process of vertical heating of the atmosphere is

called convection and the transfer of heat from the horizontal movement of air is called convection. The process of reflecting the heat received from the sun by the

earth in the form of long waves is known as terrestrial radiation. The balance of its temperature by the earth by taking heat from the sun and releasing heat into space through terrestrial radiation is called the heat budget of the earth. The reflected amount of solar radiation is called the earth's albedo.

Temperature- Temperature is the measure in degrees of heat or cold of a substance or place. The factors controlling the distribution of temperature are latitude line, altitude of the place from sea level, distance from sea, circulation of air density, presence of cold ocean currents etc. Stratosphere lines are commonly used to show the temperature distribution of the surface on maps. Strap lines connect places of similar temperature, often parallel to latitudes. In January, the stratosphere lines deviate north of the oceans and southward on the continents. It can be seen on the North Atlantic Ocean. In the month of July, these lines often run parallel to the latitudes. The process of increasing temperature as the height increases is called thermal inversion. In mountainous and mountainous areas, inversion occurs due to air runoff. Winter, cloudlessness, long nights, calm air are ideal conditions for cyclones. The factor that promotes stability in the lower level of the atmosphere is the crustal inversion.

Know this also-

- The months of January and July represent opposite climatic conditions. By studying the distribution of their temperature, the average conditions of the temperature of the whole year can be estimated.

Atmospheric circulation- The circulation of air on a large scale on Earth is

Table 3.2		
Level	Air Pressure (Millibar)	Temperature (Cm)
Sea Level	1,013.25	15.2
1 K.M	898.76	8.7
5 K.M	540.48	-17.3
10 K.M	265.00	-49.7

called 'atmospheric circulation'. The process taking place in the air upwards from the earth's surface is called circulation and the process taking place in the opposite direction i.e. inside the earth's surface is called 'cell'. There are

three categories of cells - 'Hadley cell' in tropical regions, 'Farrell cell' in temperate zones and 'Polar cell' in Polar Regions, which determine the pattern of general circulation of the atmosphere. Transfer of thermal energy from low latitudes to high latitudes maintains normal circulation of air. The normal circulation of air also affects the oceans. The form of global winds mainly depends on latitudinal variation in atmospheric temperature, presence of air pressure belts, displacement of air pressure belts with solar rays, distribution of oceans and continents and rotation of the Earth.

The weight falling on the unit area of air located in the atmosphere is called atmospheric pressure. The reason for the variation in atmospheric pressure is the diffusion of air when heated and shrinking when it is cold. Air flows from high pressure areas to low pressure areas. Atmospheric pressure decides when the air will rise and when it will sit down. Air performs the work of redistributing



temperature and humidity, so that the temperature of the earth remains constant. There is an inverse relationship between air pressure and temperature. The unit

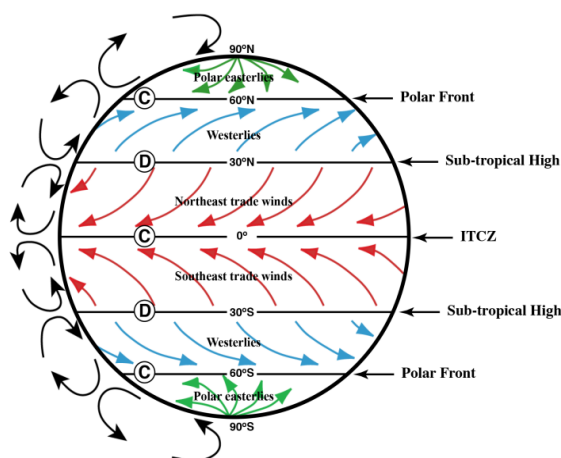


Fig3. 3- The simplest circulation of the atmosphere

of measuring atmospheric pressure is millibar and its measuring device is called barometer. The air pressure in the lower part of the atmosphere decreases rapidly with altitude. At every 10 meters altitude, the air pressure is reduced by 1 millibar, but the rate of decrease of air pressure is not the same. The horizontal distribution of air pressure is studied by the surface lines drawn at equal intervals. These lines connect places with uniform air pressure from the sea level. The rotation speed and temperature of the earth have a

special effect on the distribution of air pressure on the surface. Areas with latitudes 30° north and 30° south are called subtropical high air pressure areas. The low pressure belts found at latitudes 60° north and 60° south towards the poles are called low polar pressure boxes. There is a high air pressure near the poles, which is called polar high air pressure belt. Due to the temporary pressure of these air pressure boxes, they keep moving towards north and south as well as the sun is north or south. Of the four major air pressure boxes, equatorial low air pressure boxes and polar low air pressure boxes are thermal. Subpolar low air pressure boxes and subtropical high air pressure boxes are dynamic.

The wind- Air moving horizontally due to variation in atmospheric pressure is called 'wind'. Winds that change their directions according to the season are called 'seasonal winds'. Winds that blow at a particular place are called 'local winds'. Monsoon and local winds blowing in land areas, sea areas, mountainous areas and valley areas are also seasonal winds. The wind blowing from land to water at night is called 'land breeze'. The wind blowing from sea to land in the afternoon is called 'sea breeze'. The cold and heavy winds blowing from the mountain peaks towards the valleys at night are called 'mountain winds'. The hot wind that blows from the valleys towards the mountains during the day is called 'valley wind'. The cold air blowing from high snowy and plateau areas is called 'descending wind'.

Generally the flow of winds is from high pressure to low pressure. Surface horizontal winds result from the combined effects of pressure gradient, friction, and Coriolis force. The force generated due to difference in air pressure is called 'air pressure gradient force'. The gradient force is greater on isobars and less when away from them. The effect of friction force is 1 to 3 km on the surface. It grows up to a height of more than. This also affects the speed of winds. The force exerted by the rotation of the Earth is called 'Coriolis force'. Due to Coriolis force,

winds get deflected to the right from their original direction in the Northern Hemisphere and to the left in the Southern Hemisphere. The circulation of winds around the low pressure area is called 'cyclonic circulation' and the circulation of winds in the high pressure area is called 'anticyclonic circulation'.

Air mass- Air having specific properties related to temperature and humidity are called 'air masses'.

Tropical air masses are hot and polar air masses are cold. There are five main air masses- 1. Tropical oceanic air mass 2. Tropical continental air mass 3. Polar oceanic air mass 4. Polar continental air mass 5. Arctic continental air mass. Where two different types of air masses meet, the boundary area between them is called 'front'. There are four types of fronts - 1. Cold front 2. Warm front 3. Fixed front 4. Superposed front. Due to the sudden change in temperature due to the front, the air rises upwards, forming clouds and causing rain. Strong winds moving around low atmospheric pressure from outside to inside are called 'cyclone'. The wind flow system associated with the high pressure area located in the atmosphere is called 'anticyclone'. Hot winds are called cyclones in the Southern Hemisphere and the Indian Ocean. Hot winds blowing in the Northern Hemisphere and the Atlantic Ocean are called 'hurricanes' and 'typhoons'. Generally the average speed of these cyclones is 120 km. The speed is more than per hour. Tropical cyclones originating in the northwest Pacific Ocean and China Sea are called 'typhoons'. Such a tropical cyclone which is small, intense and very destructive is called 'tornado'. Local storms formed due to strong convection during humid days are called 'thunderstorms'.

Water in the atmosphere- Water is an important component in the atmosphere. In Vedic literature, the presence of water in the atmosphere has been mentioned- “समुद्रादूर्मिर्मधुमाँ उदारदुपांशुना सममृतत्वमानत घृतस्य नाम गुह्यं यदस्ति जिह्वा देवानाममृतस्य

नाभिः” ॥” (ऋ.4.58.1) Meaning, “O humans! “The water that goes from near the earth to the sky through the air due to the glory of the Sun, is imbued with sweet qualities due to the creation of God and that rain water is in the form of nectar.”

In one mantra the sage says while praying- उदीरयथा मरुतः समुद्रो यूयं वृष्टिं वर्षयथा पुरीषिणः । (ऋ.5.55.5) That is, O Maruts! You, inspire rain from space. O cloud full of water! You make it rain. In one mantra there is mention of lightning falling during the rainy season, ‘प्र वाता वान्ति पतयन्ति विद्युतः’ । (ऋ.5.83.4) That is, 'At the time of rain caused by Parjanya, strong winds blow and lightning occurs.

Know this also -

- The centrifugal force generated by the rotation of the Earth is called Coriolis force. Due to this, a deflection is created in the direction of winds moving from high air pressure to low air pressure. As a result, winds turn to the right in the Northern Hemisphere and to the left in the Southern Hemisphere. This transformative force was discovered by a scholar named Coriolis.



Water exists in the atmosphere in three forms- solid, liquid and gas. Exchange of water between the atmosphere, oceans and continents occurs through evaporation, transpiration, condensation and precipitation. Water present in the atmosphere as vapor is called '**water vapor**' and moisture present in the air is called '**humidity**'. The actual amount of water vapor in the atmosphere is called '**absolute humidity**' and the percentage of atmospheric humidity is called '**relative humidity**'. Humidity is highest over the oceans and lowest over the continents. Air completely filled with water vapor at a certain temperature is called '**saturated air**' and the temperature at which saturation occurs is called '**dew point**'. The transformation of water from liquid to gaseous state due to heat is called '**evaporation**'. The temperature at which evaporation of water starts is called '**latent heat**' of vaporization. The conversion of water vapor into water is called '**condensation**'. Condensation is caused by drop in temperature. When a substance is directly converted into vapor from its solid state, it is called '**sublimation**', like camphor and iodine. Water vapor, after moisture and condensation in the atmosphere, gets converted into one of the forms dew, fog, frost and cloud. When, due to the humidity of the air, water gets deposited in the form of drops on any solid object like stone, grass, leaves on the surface, then it is called '**dew**'. When dew drops freeze in the form of ice particles due to the temperature falling to 0° or below, it is called '**Frost**'. A cloud containing water and vapor with low visibility near the earth's surface is called **fog**. The combined form of fog and smoke is called **smoke fog**.

Clouds- Groups of water drops or ice particles located in the atmosphere are called '**clouds**'. Clouds are formed by condensation of water vapor in free air at sufficient height from the earth's surface. On the basis of height, density, expansion and transparency, there are mainly four types of clouds- 1. **Cirrus clouds** 2. **Cumulus clouds** 3. **Stratus clouds** 4. **Rain clouds**. 8000 to 12000 m. Clouds that look like feathers and have a height of 100 meters are called '**cirrus clouds**'. 4000 to 7000 m. Clouds that look like cotton scattered at a height of 100 m are called '**cumulus clouds**'. Dense clouds in layered form at some height above the ground are called '**stratus clouds**'. Opaque cloud groups located near the ground level are called '**rain clouds**'. When atmospheric water vapor condenses and comes to the earth in the form of solid or water drops, it is called 'precipitation'. When water vapor comes to the earth in the form of water drops, it is called 'rain'. Precipitation in the form of snowflakes when the temperature is below freezing point is called '**snow**'. Rain is mainly divided into three parts- 1. **Convenience rain** 2. **Mountain rain** 3. **Cyclonic rain**. When the hot air reaches a sufficient height, it cools down to the dew point and forms cumulus clouds. The rain caused by cumulus clouds is called '**convenience rain**'. The rainfall that occurs due to the rising and condensation of winds due to the position of a mountain in the path of humid winds is called '**mountain rain**'. The rain that occurs with a cyclone or depression is called '**cyclonic rain**'. The mountainous area where rainfall is less than average is called '**rain shadow area**'.



The amount of rainfall on the earth's surface varies throughout the year, with different seasons occurring in different parts of the world. The amount of rainfall decreases from the equator towards the poles. The coastal areas receive more rainfall than the continents. 200 cm in the equatorial belt, temperate regions, coastal parts of monsoon areas. It rains more than 100 to 200 cm in the interior parts of the continents, moderate in the coastal parts of the continents, while 50-100 cm in the eastern and interior parts of the central and temperate regions of the tropical regions. There is annual rainfall. Thus the distribution of rainfall in the world is sky-high.

Question

Multiple Choice Questions-

- Air's total mass on the earth is-
A. 70%. B. 99% C. 98% D. 80%
- The main source of energy of the earth is
A. Sun B. Stars C. Moon D. None
- The Ozone layer extends up to km from the surface of the earth.
A. 18 km B. 30 km C. 75 km D. 80 km
- The temperature of the sun's surface is Celsius.
A. 400000 B. 20000 C. 60000 D. None of These
- The unit of measuring atmospheric pressure is
A. Decimeter B. Milligram
C. Centimeter D. Millibar

Fill in the blanks-

- The lowest layer of the atmosphere is..... (Stratosphere/Troposphere)
- All elements in the external world found in the..... State
(Dense/ dense) rare)
- Because of..... The temperature of the earth remains normal. (Water vapor/gases)
- The sun is at its highest distance from the earth on..... (January 3/July 4)

Write the true/ false-

- The temperature of the stratosphere remains the same. (True/False)
- The middle zone extends up to 50 km. (True/False)
- The cyclone is called typhoon in the Northern Hemisphere. (True/False)
- Hurricane is a wind blowing at a speed of 120 km per hour. (True/False)

Match the pair correctly-

- | | |
|-----------------------|---|
| 1. Local Sameer | A. land to water winds |
| 2. Terrestrial Sameer | B. Hot winds blowing during the day from valleys to mountains |
| 3. Marine Sameer | C. Winds originating from local conditions |
| 4. Valley winds | D. Winds moving from sea to land |

Very short answer questions-

- What do you mean by water vapor?



-
2. What is wind?
 3. What is the essence of vatagra?
 4. What is a cyclone?
 5. What do you mean by air pressure?

Short Answer Questions-

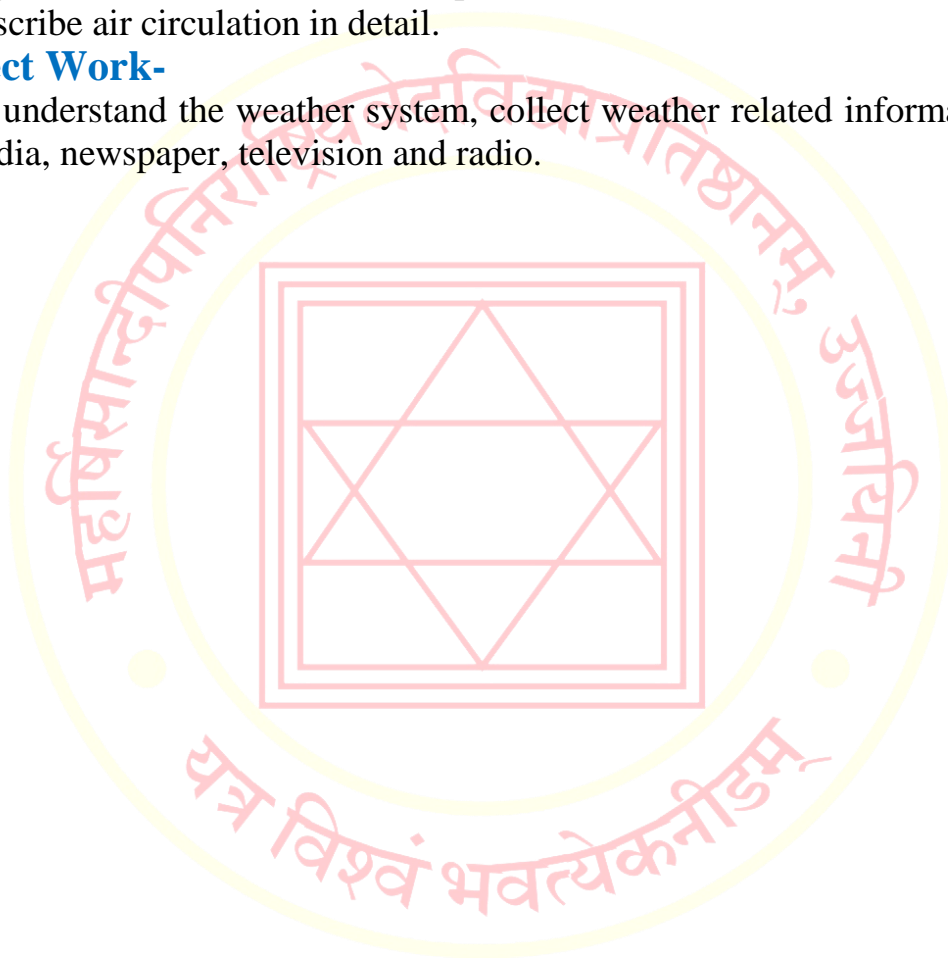
1. What is the difference between Mountain and Valley Samir?
2. What are the forces affecting the direction and velocity of the winds?
3. What do you mean by solar radiation?
4. Explain the process of heating of the atmosphere?

Long Answer Questions-

1. Explain the structure of the atmosphere in detail.
2. Describe air circulation in detail.

Project Work-

1. To understand the weather system, collect weather related information from media, newspaper, television and radio.



Chapter-4

Water and Climate

In this chapter- Water and main components of water, relief of the ocean floor, temperature of ocean water, vertical and horizontal distribution of temperature, salinity in sea water, ocean water circulation, ocean currents, types and effects, tides, climate, Empirical method of climate classification, climate change and causes, climate in the pre-Holocene period, green house gases.

Water- Due to the abundant amount of water on the Earth's surface, the Earth is called the 'Blue Planet'. About three-fourths of the earth is covered with water.

About 97.25% of the total water on Earth is located in oceans and seas. The remaining 2.75% water is present in the form of rivers, lakes and underground water. In the Earth's hydrosphere, water continuously circulates in gaseous, liquid and solid states. The continuous flow of water to the seas, oceans, atmosphere and surface as a cyclical process is called hydrological cycle. The main components of water are sea and ocean water, atmospheric

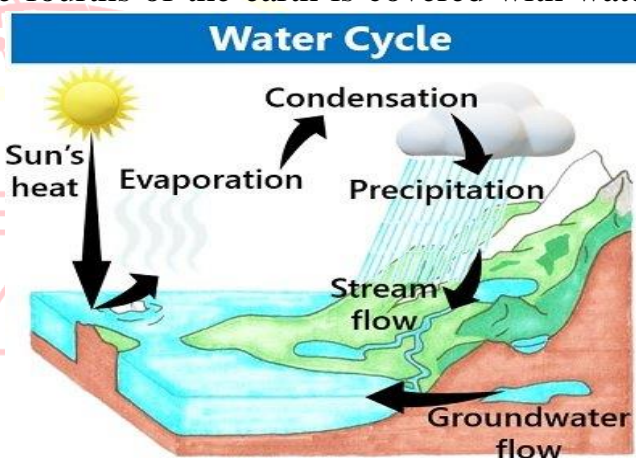


Fig- 4.1 Hydrological cycle

water, water stored in the form of snow, surface water, and underground water. The vast group of water bodies on Earth is called 'Ocean'. Oceans cover about two-thirds of the Earth's total area. There are a total of five oceans on Earth - 1. Pacific Ocean 2. Atlantic Ocean 3. Indian Ocean 4. Arctic Ocean 5. Antarctic Ocean. In comparison to oceans, a small body of water which is surrounded by an ocean on one side is called 'Sea'. These are connected to the oceans but are less deep. Red Sea, South China Sea, Black Sea, Caspian Sea, Arabian Sea etc. are the major seas.

Do you know?

- There are more than 20,000 islands in the Pacific Ocean. The deepest place in the Pacific Ocean is the Mariana Trench (11022 meters).
- The northern limit of the Indian Ocean (Semi-Ocean) is the Tropic of Cancer. The Indian Ocean has two troughs – Sunda and Diamantina.
- The major islands of the Indian Ocean are Madagascar, Sri Lanka, Zanzibar, Andaman-Nicobar, Lakshadweep, Maldives, Mauritius, and Reunion Island.

Relief of the ocean floor - Seas and oceans are located in the outer layer of the earth in the form of huge depressions. The major part of the ocean floor lies 3 to 6 km below the sea level. Is found in the middle. There are huge mountain ranges, deep troughs and large plains on the surface of the oceans. They are also formed by diffraction, volcanism and deposition. The main four parts of the oceanic crust are-

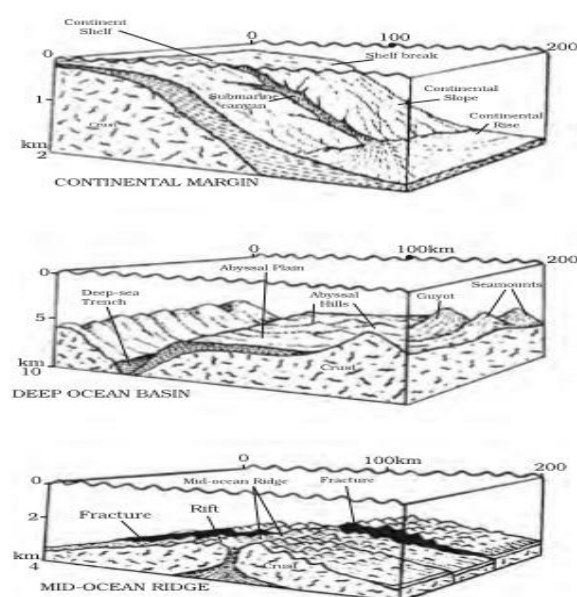


Figure-4.2 Relief of the ocean floor

deep oceanic plain.

4. The narrow basin with the deepest and steepest edges of the oceans is called the oceanic trough. In addition to these major accents, there are many other small shapes found in the oceans. The main minor figures are the central oceanic Cuttack, which is made up of two series of mountains. Sea mounds, which are generated by volcanoes. The most flat submerged canyons, which are deep valleys. Submerged islands are flat summited sea dunes and coral islands which are low-sized islands with coral reefs.

Temperature of ocean water- Ocean water gets heated due to the heat of the Sun. The process of heating and cooling takes place at a slower pace in the aquatic parts of the Earth as compared to the terrestrial parts. The main factors affecting the temperature distribution of ocean water are latitude, constant winds, ocean winds, uneven distribution of land and water. The average temperature of surface water in the oceans is about 27° C. It happens. The temperature of ocean water decreases with increasing depth. About 200 m in the oceans. At depth, the temperature of water decreases rapidly, after which the rate of decrease in temperature decreases. The

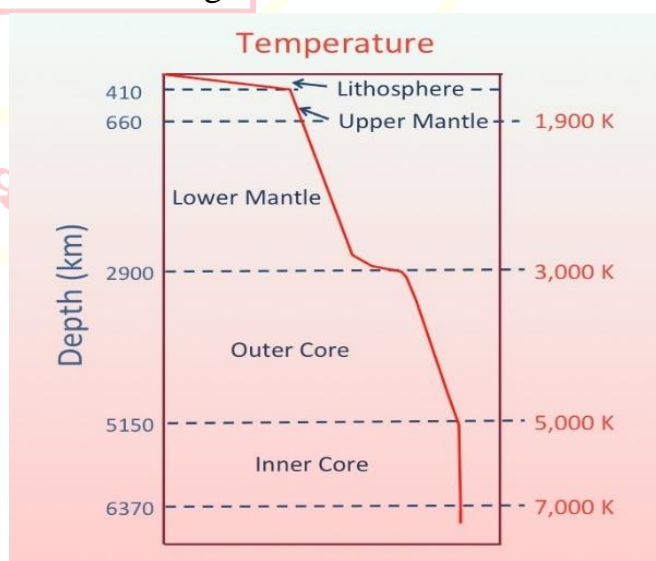


Figure- 4.3 Temperature gradient

oceans located in the Northern Hemisphere have higher temperatures than the oceans in the Southern Hemisphere. The average temperature in the Northern Hemisphere is 19° C. And in the Southern Hemisphere 16° C. lives.

Salinity of ocean water- An important property of sea water is salinity. Salinity is used to determine the amount of salt dissolved in seawater. The factors

Know this also-

- Areas with highest salinity are Turkey's Van Lake (330%), Dead Sea (238%) and Great Salt Lake (220%).

affecting ocean salinity are evaporation, precipitation, wind, ocean currents etc. Salinity of water is measured by the amount of salt dissolved in 1000 grams (1kg) of water. Generally the average salinity in the oceans ranges from 33% to 37%. 41% salinity is

found in the Red Sea and 36% in the Atlantic Ocean. The rate of evaporation is high in hot and dry areas. The salinity of water in such areas is 70%. Even up to. The process of increase and decrease in salinity of surface water continues but the salinity of water at depth is almost fixed. The salinity of water increases with depth. Such an area in the depth of water, where the salinity of water increases rapidly, is called 'halocline'.

Ocean water circulation- Ocean water is constantly moving. The reason for this mobility is the physical characteristics of the oceans (temperature, salinity, density) and external forces (air, sun, and moon). It consists of both horizontal and vertical motions. The currents and waves of ocean water are related to horizontal motion and tides are related to vertical motion. Ocean water currents are the continuous flow of a large amount of water in a certain direction. Yes. Ocean water rises and falls twice a day due to the attraction of the sun and the moon. The continuous flow of a large amount of water in a certain direction is called 'ocean water currents'.

Waves- Waves are energy in a way in which water particles move in a small circular form. Due to the energy given by the air to the ocean water, waves are produced in them. As the waves move forward, they grow bigger. The movement of water under the waves is circular. We get to know the highest point of the wave from the intensity of the wind. The shape and shape of a triangle shows its origin. Giant waves are found in the oceans.

Ocean currents- The regular flow of water from one place to another in a certain path and direction in the oceans is called ocean currents. It shows the flow of water. The surface currents of the oceans are intense and slow in depth. Ocean currents are controlled by primary forces and secondary forces. Two types of forces affect ocean currents. Primary forces such as air, heating of water by the sun, gravitational force, Coriolis force, etc. provide motion to water. Secondary forces are the ones that control water streams. Due to the

Know this also-

- The flow of ocean currents is measured in knots.



Coriolis force, the hot currents flowing in the lower latitudes turn to their left in the Northern Hemisphere and to their right in the Southern Hemisphere.

Types of Ocean Currents-

1. **On the basis of depth-** Ocean currents are of two types based on depth - surface water currents which are 10% of the total ocean water. They are found in the oceans up to a depth of 400 m. Deep streams that account for 90% of the total ocean water. They are of low temperature and high density.
2. **On the basis of temperature-** Ocean currents are of two types based on temperature - cold currents which often flow on the western coast of the continents. These cold waters bring warm water into the warm water areas. Lebroderi, Humboldt (Peru), Oyashio, etc. are cold streams. Warm Currents: **Warm streams flow on the eastern coast of the continents.** They transport hot water to cold water areas. Alaska, Curocio Stream, Brazilian Stream, Agulhas, Gulf Stream, etc. are hot streams.

Effects of ocean currents- These currents directly and indirectly affect human life. In areas where cold currents run, the average, daily and annual temperatures are low and in areas where warm currents (oceanic) run, the annual temperature difference is low. In the areas of hot and cold streams, micro-marine organisms, which are the main food of fish, are found in abundance. Therefore, the major fishing areas of the world are found in these parts.

Tides- Due to the attraction of the sun and the moon, the rise and fall of the water level of the oceans is called tides. The rise of water is called a tide and the fall down is called a reflux. Centrifugal force helps in the formation of tides.

Types of tides- There are two bases for classification of tides- (a) Based on the angular position of the sun, moon and earth (b) On the basis of frequency.

(A) There are two types of tides based on the angular position of the sun, moon and earth-

1. Long or high tide
2. Small or low tides.

1. **Long or high tide-**

When the sun and

moon come in a straight line, due to their combined gravitational force,

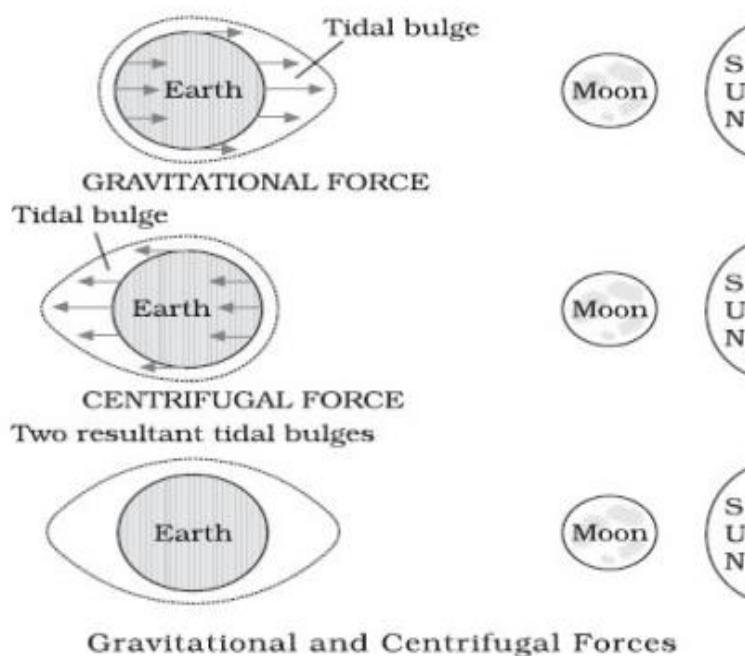


Figure-4.4 Relation between the force of gravity and tides

the rise of ocean water on the earth to the height is called long or high tide. Such tides come on full moon and amavasya.

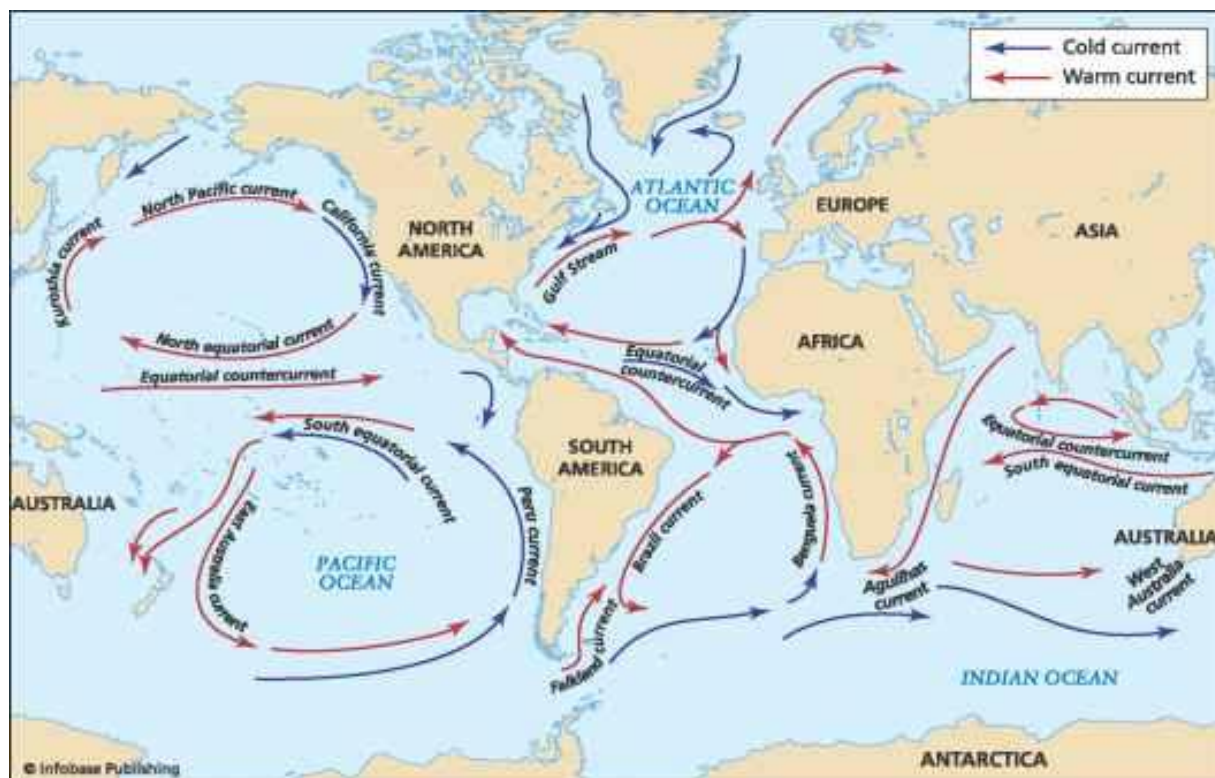


Fig. 4.5 Ocean currents

2. **Small or low tides-** When the earth, sun and moon come in the right angled position, the ocean water rises to a lower height than high tide, it is called short or low tide.

(B) There are three types of tides depending on the frequency:

1. **Daily tides-** They occur twice a day (one high and one low tide).
2. **Semi-daily tides-** They occur four times a day (two high and two low tides).
3. **Mixed tides-** Tides that vary in height.

Importance of tides- Due to tides, the salinity of the sea remains. The mouth of the sea is cleared by it. Due to tides, the amount of fish in the sea increases. Due to tides, the temperature of the oceans remains balanced.

Tides are also used to generate electrical power. Big ships can easily reach the shore through tidal waves.

Climate- Air and water are important components for the creation of a suitable environment for life on earth. Air and water together form the climate. Climate is called climate in English. The word climat is derived from the Greek word klima which means 'inclination'. In fact, the long-term general state of the atmosphere of a large region of the earth is called climate. The amount of heat varies at different latitudes of the earth. On the basis of this variation, the earth is divided

Know this also-

- The world's highest tide (15-16 meter high) occurs in the Bay of Fundy in Navascosia, Canada.

into climatic conditions. Weather is the specific position of the atmosphere at a particular time at a particular place. Temperature, pressure, air, humidity, clouds and rainfall are important elements of weather and climate, which affect the life of human beings. The climate of the entire world is mainly divided into three parts - genetic, empirical and applied.

Köppen's method of climate classification- V. Köppen's empirical method (1918 AD) is most commonly used in the classification of climate. Later, amendments were made. For climate classification, Köppen selected certain values of temperature and precipitation and linked them to the distribution of vegetation. Köppen created five climate groups, four of which are based on temperature and one on precipitation. Out of these five groups, group A, C, D and E represent humid climate and group B represents dry climate.

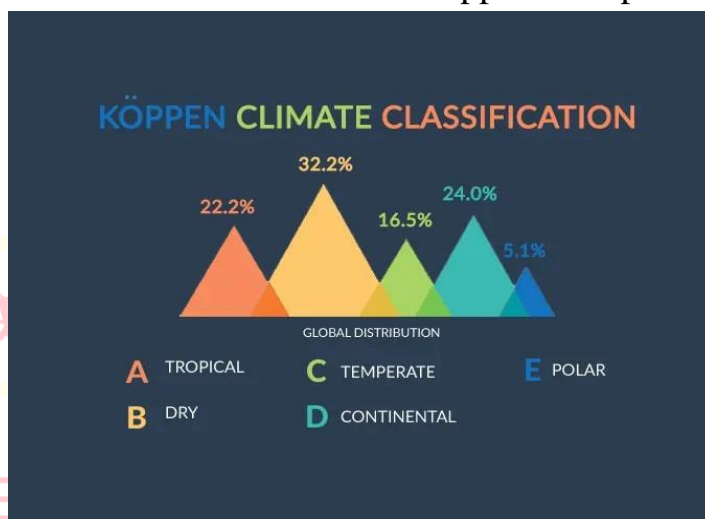


Fig. 4.6 Köppen's system of climate classification

Table 4.2

Group	Type	Code Letter	Characteristics
A Tropical humid climate	Tropical humidity tropical monsoon Tropical Humid and Dry	Af Am Aw	No dry season. Monsoon, short dry season dry winter season
B Dry climate	subtropical steppe subtropical desert mid-latitude steppe Mid-latitude desert	BSk BWh BSk BWk	low latitude semi-arid and dry low latitude dry mid-latitude semi-arid or dry mid-latitude dry
C. Cold storage (mid-latitude climate)	humid subtropical Mediterranean Sea Marine West Coastal	Cfa Csa Cfb	mid-latitude semi-arid or dry dry hot summer No dry season, cool and cold summers
D. Cold	humid continental Sub-North Polar	Df Dw	There is no dry season. Severe winter Cold, dry and extremely severe

E Cold climate	tundra Polar Hystery	ET EF	No summer in the true sense Snow-capped snow
F High land	High land	H	Snowy high lands

- **Group A-** has a tropical climate found between the Tropics of Cancer and Capricorn. Here the rainfall is high and the annual temperature is low. The tropical climate is divided into three parts - tropical humid climate (AT), tropical monsoon climate (Am), and tropical humid and dry climate (Aw).
- **Group B-** has a dry climate with very low rainfall extending between latitudes 15° to 60° north and south of the equator. Dry climate is divided into two parts- semi-arid climate (BS) and desert climate (BW).
- **Group C** has a temperate mid-latitudinal climate found on the eastern and western boundaries of the continents between 30° to 50° latitudes. It is divided into four parts- humid subtropical climate (CWA), Mediterranean climate (Cs), humid subtropical climate (CFA), marine western coastal climate (CFB).
- **Group D** consists of a cold snow forest climate found in a wide continental region of Europe, Asia and North America between 40° and 70° latitudes in the Northern Hemisphere. It is divided into two parts - cold climate (D) with humid winters, cold climate (DW) with dry winters.
- **Group E** has a polar climate with 70° latitude towards the North and South Poles. It is divided into two parts - tundra climate (ET) and snowtop climate (EF).
- **In group F**, highland climate is found in mountainous regions, which is controlled by topography. Layered vertical regions are found in these climatic zones.

Climate Change- Climate change refers to a historical change in the sequence of average weather conditions. These changes come from both natural and human causes. Climate change is a continuous process that has been going on since the emergence of the earth. It is believed that the climate of Thar in Rajasthan in India was humid and cold in 8000 BC. It was the center of Harappan culture from 2000 to 1700 BC. But due to climate change over time, dry climate is now predominant here.

Causes of climate change- There are many causes of climate change such as-

A. Natural causes- The main natural causes of climate change are-

1. Volcanic eruption
2. Sea storm
3. Flood
4. Landslide
5. Continental convection, etc.

B. Human causes- The main human causes of climate change are-

1. Industrialization
2. Deforestation
3. Mining
4. Urbanization
5. Population growth
6. Means of transport etc.

Climate in the innovative pre-era- Europe has gone through many times hot, humid, cold and dry eras. Europe experienced a short ice age in the period 1550-1850. From 1885 to 1940, global temperatures increased. In the 1930s, there was



Greenhouse Gases- Apart from water vapor, carbon dioxide, chloro-fluoro carbon, methane, nitrous oxide and ozone gases mainly found in the earth's atmosphere are called green house gases. These gases spread in the upper layer of the atmosphere, due to which the sun's rays are reflected from the earth but the temperature can neither go out of the earth's atmosphere nor return back to the earth. Due to this, the temperature of the earth's surface increases, this is called green house effect or green house effect. The main reasons for the increase of these gases on earth are increasing industrialization, population, mechanization etc. To reduce the emissions of these gases from the earth, the Kyoto Protocol was accepted at the global level in 1997. The Kyoto Proclamation, which came into effect in 2005, has been ratified by 141 countries. Under the Kyoto Protocol, it was ensured that 35 industrialized nations would reduce their 1990 greenhouse gas emissions levels by 5 percent by 2012.

Multiple Choice Questions-

- ## Fill in the blanks -

- महर्षि सान्दीपनि राष्ट्रीय वेदविद्या प्रतिष्ठान, उज्जैन (म.प्र.)**
(शिक्षा मन्त्रालय, भारत सरकार का स्वायत्तशासी संस्थान)

Write the true/false -

1. There are three forms of water. True/False
2. Salinity is an important property of seawater. True/False
3. Daily tide comes once in 48 hours. True/False
4. The year 1998 was the warmest year of the twentieth century/millennium. True/False

Match the pair correctly-

1. Average temperature in the Northern Hemisphere. A. Nimag Island
2. Average temperature in southern hemisphere B. Central Ocean Cuttack
3. It is made up of two series of mountains, C. 16° Selshius
4. There are sea dunes with flat summits, D. 19° Selshius

Very short answer question-

1. What is hydrological cycle?
2. What is continental shelf?
3. What are ocean currents?
4. What is climate?

Short Answer Questions –

1. Write a note on the elevation of the oceanic substratum.
2. What is a tide? Mention its types.
3. Explain Köppen's method of climate classification.
4. What is the greenhouse effect?

Long Answer Questions –

1. What are ocean currents? Describe its type and effect.
2. What is climate change? Explain the natural and human causes.

Project Work-

1. Go to a lake or pond and observe the waves and write down your experiences.



Chapter 5

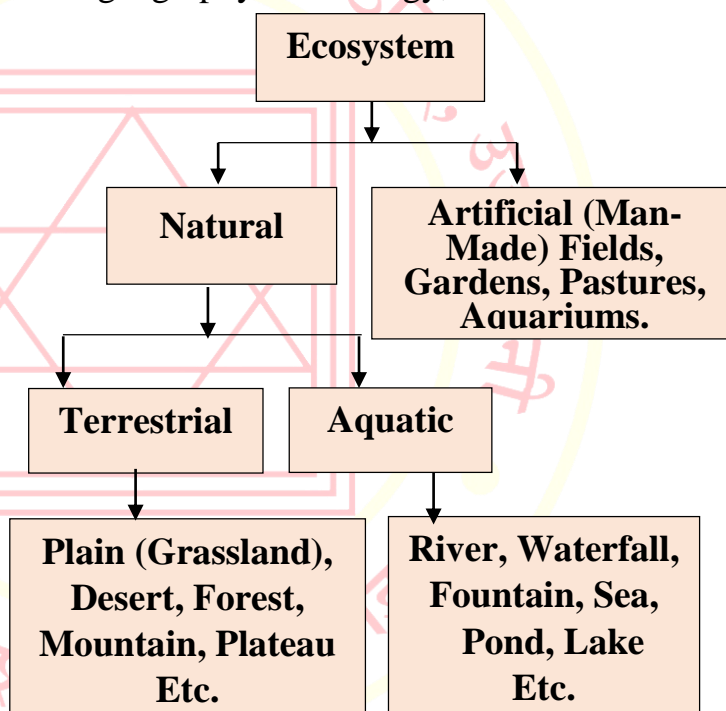
Biosphere on earth

In this chapter- Biosphere, Ecology, Ecosystem and structure of ecosystem, Biome, Biogeochemical cycle, Biodiversity, Importance of biodiversity, and Biodiversity conservation in Vedic literature.

Biosphere- The last stage of the origin of the earth is considered to be related to the origin and development of life. Life has evolved in land, water and atmosphere. In all these parts, the habitats of organisms are combined together called biosphere. All organisms together form the biosphere on earth. It contains living components that interact with other natural factors- land, water, soil, temperature, rainfall, humidity and sunlight to help in the survival, growth and development of organisms.

Ecology- Ecology is that branch of geography and biology, under which studies the mutual relations of living communities with their environment. Ecology is called Ecology in English language. This word was first used by the German scientist E. Haeckel. Ecology is made up of two Greek words, Oikos and Logy, which mean 'study of home'. Under ecology, the earth is studied as the home of humans, plants, animals and microorganisms. It is related to the birth, development, distribution, tendency of living beings and their survival in adverse conditions. The relationship between organisms, plants, animals (humans and other living beings) in the earth's environment is called 'ecological balance'. The habituation of different plants and animals to an environment during evolution is called 'ecological adaptation'.

Ecosystem- As a part of ecology, ecosystem means an integrated system which is formed by the interaction between biotic and abiotic components of the environment. That is, the natural functional unit formed by the combined biological and non-biological components is called ecosystem. It includes all living organisms, which interact with the abiotic environment (water, air, soil) to form a complete unit. There are two types of ecosystem-



-
1. Natural ecosystem
 2. Artificial ecosystem.

Natural ecosystem has two parts- terrestrial ecosystem and aquatic ecosystem. The place on Earth where biotic and abiotic components of the environment interact with each other is called terrestrial ecosystem, such as forest, grass, desert and tundra, taiga etc. The aquatic area of the earth where organic and inorganic components interact with each other is called aquatic ecosystem, such as oceans, seas, estuaries, coral reefs, lakes, rivers, swamps etc. Artificial ecosystems are created by humans, such as fields, gardens, pastures, aquariums (artificial reservoirs) etc.

Structure of Ecosystem- In terms of structure, there are mainly two components in the ecosystem biotic and abiotic. The organic components include producers (plants, algae, grasses, etc.), consumers (primary, secondary and tertiary) and decomposers. Primary consumers are vegetarians, secondary consumers are non-vegetarians and disposable agents. Abiotic components include temperature, precipitation, sunlight, humidity, soil conditions, inorganic elements, etc.

Biome- All the animals and plants found on the earth are jointly called biomes. The interrelated groups of flora and fauna found in a large geographical area in the ecosystem are called biomes. The biome is divided into 5 parts -

1. **Forest Biome-** Forest biome has three parts - tropical region, temperate region and boreal. The hot regions (10° - 25° north and south latitudes on the equator) experience extreme evaporation and rainfall. Evergreen forests found in the regions of the hot regions are known. In temperate regions, forests with medium dense and less broad leafy trees are found. Boreal includes territories such as Eurasia, parts of Siberia, Canada. Trees like pine, fir, spruce are found here in evergreen angled forests.
2. **Grassland Biome-** Forests spread over 231/20 northern and southern latitudes and temperate zones, 45° to 66° north and south latitudes on earth are called grassland biomes. Sabana, Prairie, Weld, Pampas, Lanos, etc. are the major grassland biomes.
3. **Desert biome-** It covers about 14% of the earth. It extends west of the continental region. There is often a lack of vegetation in it. This biome spreads on the earth in the form of cold, coastal, semi-arid and hot deserts.
4. **Aquatic Biome-** The plants and animals found in the aquatic part of the earth are called aquatic biomes as a whole. There are two categories of this biome - fresh water and seawater. Their area is lakes, rivers, wetlands, oceans, lagoons, tidal faces and coral reefs.
5. **High Regional Biomes-** These are shields of high mountain ranges such as Himalayas, Andes and Rocky Mountain Regions etc.

Biogeochemical Cycle- The sun is the main source of energy for organisms in the biosphere. Plants obtain their food and energy by photosynthesis from sunlight. The cyclic movement of the exchange of chemical substances between

animals and the environment in the biosphere is called biogeochemical cycle. This cycle is of two types-

1. Gaseous cycle, its major source of matter is atmosphere and ocean.
2. Sedimentary cycle, its major sources are soil, sediments and rocks.
1. **Water cycle**- Water cycle means that water is constantly moving between the sea, atmosphere and land. Its major components are steam, heating, condensation, precipitation, water flow, leakage. Water is found in all three forms solid, gas and liquid.
2. **Oxygen cycle**- The atmosphere contains about 21% oxygen. The cycling of oxygen is a complex process. The auxiliary result of photosynthesis is oxygen. Oxygen is also produced by the dissolution of water molecules. It reaches the atmosphere by transpiration of plants. Its use is the basis of life of organisms (humans and animals).
3. **Nitrogen Cycle**- Nitrogen (79%) is the major component of our atmosphere. Nitrogen reaches the soil through biological stabilization. From the soil, plants are released into animals and finally into the atmosphere after the death of plants and animals. This whole process is called nitrogen cycle.
4. **Carbon Cycle**- The basic element of organic compound carbon is found in all living organisms. Carbon is exchanged by the biogeochemical cycle with the biosphere, soil, earth's crust, hydrosphere and earth's atmosphere. It allows recycling and reuse of carbon with the biosphere and all its organisms on earth.

Biodiversity- The number of organisms found in a certain geographical area and their diversity is called biodiversity. Biodiversity is a living asset on earth. In areas where there are sufficient reserves of water and energy, biodiversity is also widespread. Even before the origin of human beings, there was biodiversity on earth. Biodiversity is higher in tropical regions than in Polar Regions. Biodiversity is divided into 3 classes-

1. **Genetic Biodiversity**- The genetic variation found in different species of animals and plants is called genetic biodiversity.
2. **Species Biodiversity**- The diversity between two species of different animals and plants is called species biodiversity.
3. **Ecosystem Biodiversity**- The diversity of species in an ecosystem is called ecological biodiversity.

Importance of biodiversity- Along with ecological creation, biodiversity has an important contribution in the development of cultural, economic and scientific fields. We can understand the importance of biodiversity in the following ways-

1. **Ecological construction**- From the point of view of biodiversity, every organism plays an important role in creating and balancing the ecosystem. Due to biodiversity, every living being on earth is able to fulfill its basic needs. Through this, our needs like food, clothes, medicines, fuel etc. are also fulfilled. Biodiversity is helpful in increasing ecological productivity. For example, if snakes are destroyed from the earth, there will be an abundance of rats and rats will destroy crops.

2. **Economic Development-** Agriculture and agricultural resources, forest resources, animal resources, water resources, energy resources etc. are such resources of economic importance from which we get many products of subsistence like grains, milk, medicines, and raw materials for industries etc. Biodiversity is at its core.

Know this also-

- There are 17 countries included in the Mega Diversity Center - Mexico, Colombia, Ecuador, Peru, Brazil, Congo, Madagascar, China, India, Malaysia, Indonesia and Australia, New Guinea, South Africa, Venezuela, Guatemala, Philippines.

3. **Development of scientific field-** Bio-diversity tells us about the origin and functioning of life, the role of each living organism and its various species in maintaining the ecosystem, etc. Understanding their importance, rational humans have developed various sciences and related scientific methods that help in the conservation of biodiversity and environment.

cause of decline in biodiversity There are many reasons for decline in biodiversity, such as hunting of wildlife, afforestation, over-grazing, destruction

Know this also-

- The International Union for the Conservation and Natural Resources (IUCN) publishes the Red List of Threatened Species.

of animal habitats, environmental pollution, habitat fragmentation, flora of foreign origin, diseases, use of zoos and animals for research, earthquakes, famines, Volcanoes, floods, etc. As a result of the decline of biodiversity, animals have been divided into three categories of susceptible species, vulnerable species and

rare species. We have studied them in detail in the previous class.

Conservation of Biodiversity- Many efforts are being made at the national and international level to conserve biodiversity. The Government of India also passed the 'Wild Life Protection Act-1972' with the aim of saving, preserving and expanding the species. About 103 national parks, 510 wildlife sanctuaries, 50



Map-5.1 Some Ecological Hot-Spots

tiger reserves, 18 biosphere reserves, 3 conservation reserves and two community reserves have been established in India. International Biodiversity Day is celebrated every year on 22 May. A resolution for the conservation of biodiversity was passed in the conference of 155 countries including India held in Rio-de-Janeiro (Brazil) in 1992. Some of the measures mentioned in this resolution letter for the conservation of biodiversity are as follows:

1. Conservation of endangered species.
2. Proper planning and management to prevent endangered species.
3. Protection of habitats of wild species should be ensured.
4. Promotion of traditional knowledge and skills helpful in conservation.
5. Wild plant and animal species should be conserved and promoted.
6. Hunting and national and international trade of wild animals should be controlled.

Biodiversity Conservation in Vedic Literature- In our ancient literature, there is a lot of emphasis on bio-conservation. The importance of flora and fauna has been enunciated by linking them to religion so that they can be protected. There is a mention of bio-conservation in Manusmriti- योऽहिंसकानि भूतानि हिनस्त्यात्मसुखेच्छया । स जीवनञ्च मृतश्चैव न क्वचित्सुखमेधते ॥ अनुमन्ता विशसिता निहन्ता क्रयविक्रयी । संस्कर्ता चोपहर्ता च खादक्श्चेति घातकाः ॥ (मनुस्मृति 5/45, 51) That is, a person who kills animals for his own pleasure is never happy, and the person who kills animals, eats their meat and markets them to kill them. They are murderers and sinners. Recognizing the importance of trees, it is said in Matsya Purana- “दश कूप समा वापी, दशवापी समोहद्राः । दशहृद् समः पुत्रो दशपुत्रो समो द्रुमः ॥” That is, “One stepwell is equal to ten wells, one pond is equal to ten stepwells, one son is equal to ten ponds and one tree is equal to ten sons.” Many such sutras are contained in Vedic and Sanskrit literature and folk tradition of India, which are very useful from the point of view of biodiversity conservation.

Question

Multiple Choice Questions-

1. Who used the term Ecology First?
A. E. Hackill
B. Thomas Joseph
C. Richard Bernard
D. None of These
2. Desert biome covers about on the earth.
A. 45%
B. 14%
C. 25%
D. 22%
3. The Main source of energy is the biosphere is
A. Sun
B. Moon
C. Mars
D. Jupiter
4. Nitrogen gas is in our atmosphere.
A. 21%
B. 79%
C. 24%
D. 51%



5. Countries are in the list of mega diversity centres.

A. 21

B. 31

C. 12

D. 51

Fill in the blanks-

1.is produced by the dissolution of water molecules.

(Oxygen/Nitrogen)

2. among all living beings..... Is found. (Carbon/Ozone)

3. Rio de Janeiro Conference was held in..... (1992 /2005 AD)

4. International Day of Biological Diversity is celebrated on (May 22/July 4)

Write the true/ false-

1. All living beings together form the biosphere on the earth. (True/False)

2. Forests, grasses, deserts and tundra are the major terrestrial ecosystems of the World. (True/False)

3. The diversity between two species is called species biodiversity. (True/False)

4. Biodiversity is higher in tropical regions than in Polar Regions. (True/False)

Match the pair correctly-

1. Forest, Grass, Desert And Tundra Region A. High Regional Biome

2. Oceans, Lakes, Rivers, Kutch, Swamps Etc. B. Terrestrial Ecosystem

3. Shields Of High Mountain Ranges C. Oxygen

4. Helpful Result Of Photosynthesis D. Aquatic Ecosystem

Very short answer questions -

1. What is ecological balance?

2. What is a waste control?

3. What is biome?

4. What is biodiversity?

Short Answer Questions -

1. What do you understand by ecology?

2. Explain the functioning and structure of the ecosystem.

3. Explain the main reason for the decline of biodiversity.



4. Explain the ecological role of biodiversity.

Long Answer Questions-

1. Describe the biome and its type in detail.
2. Highlight the reasons for the decline of biodiversity as well as the measures to conserve it.

Project Work-

1. Make a list of national parks, animal sanctuaries in your state.



Chapter-6

Natural disasters and disasters

In this chapter- Natural hazards, disaster, man-made disasters, natural calamities, natural disasters in India, earthquake, tsunami, cyclone, flood, drought, landslide.

Natural Crisis- Natural crisis means sudden rapid changes in the natural environment, which have harmful effects on life and human activities. Volcanic eruption, earthquake, flood, snowfall, hailstorm, cyclone, various epidemics etc. come under natural hazards. Natural disasters cause huge loss of life and property.

Disaster- Disaster refers to such unexpected and unforeseeable outbreaks, natural or man-made, which cause serious disruption in normal life and the damage caused by them cannot be restored. Disaster can be mainly divided into two categories-

1. Man-made disaster 2. Natural disaster.

1. **Man made disasters-** Such human activities due to which the threat of destruction of life on earth is continuously increasing are called 'human-caused disasters'. Man-made disasters are related to various types of accidents caused by human activities, such as climate change, ozone layer depletion, rising earth's temperature, environmental pollution, terrorist activities, war, sudden fire, increasing mechanization and Industries, etc. Due to human activities, many such disasters have occurred in many parts of the world, due to which there has been huge loss of life and property, for example, about 210,000 or more people died due to America's atomic bomb attack on Japan in 1945. People had died. The ill effects of nuclear radiation can be seen there today. Similarly, in the form of industrial disaster in India, Bhopal gas tragedy of 1984 etc. are examples of man-made disaster.

Table 6.1		
Disaster	Affected	Countries
Earthquake	1948	the Soviet Union (110,000)
Flood	1949	China (57,000)
Earthquake	1976	China (700,000)
Tsunami	2004	Indonesia, India, Sri Lanka (3,00,000)
Tsunami	2011	Japan (15,842)

2. **Natural Disasters-** Environmental imbalance and sudden terrible form of internal movement of the earth is called natural disaster. Natural disasters lead to large scale loss of public money and shatter social systems and lives. No one has control over them. Sunamis, floods, earthquakes, volcanoes, cyclones,



avalanches, landslides, etc. are natural disasters. Some of the disasters that have occurred in the past have affected the whole world. The table shows the countries affected by various disasters from 1948 to 2011.

Classification of Natural Disasters- Their identification and classification is being considered as an effective and scientific step to deal with natural disasters. Natural disasters can be mainly classified into four categories-

Natural Disasters in India- India is a country of large size natural environmental, social and cultural diversity. Due to long-term colonization and high population, a large area here is vulnerable to natural disasters. The major natural disasters that occur here are earthquakes, sunamis, floods, droughts and landslides.

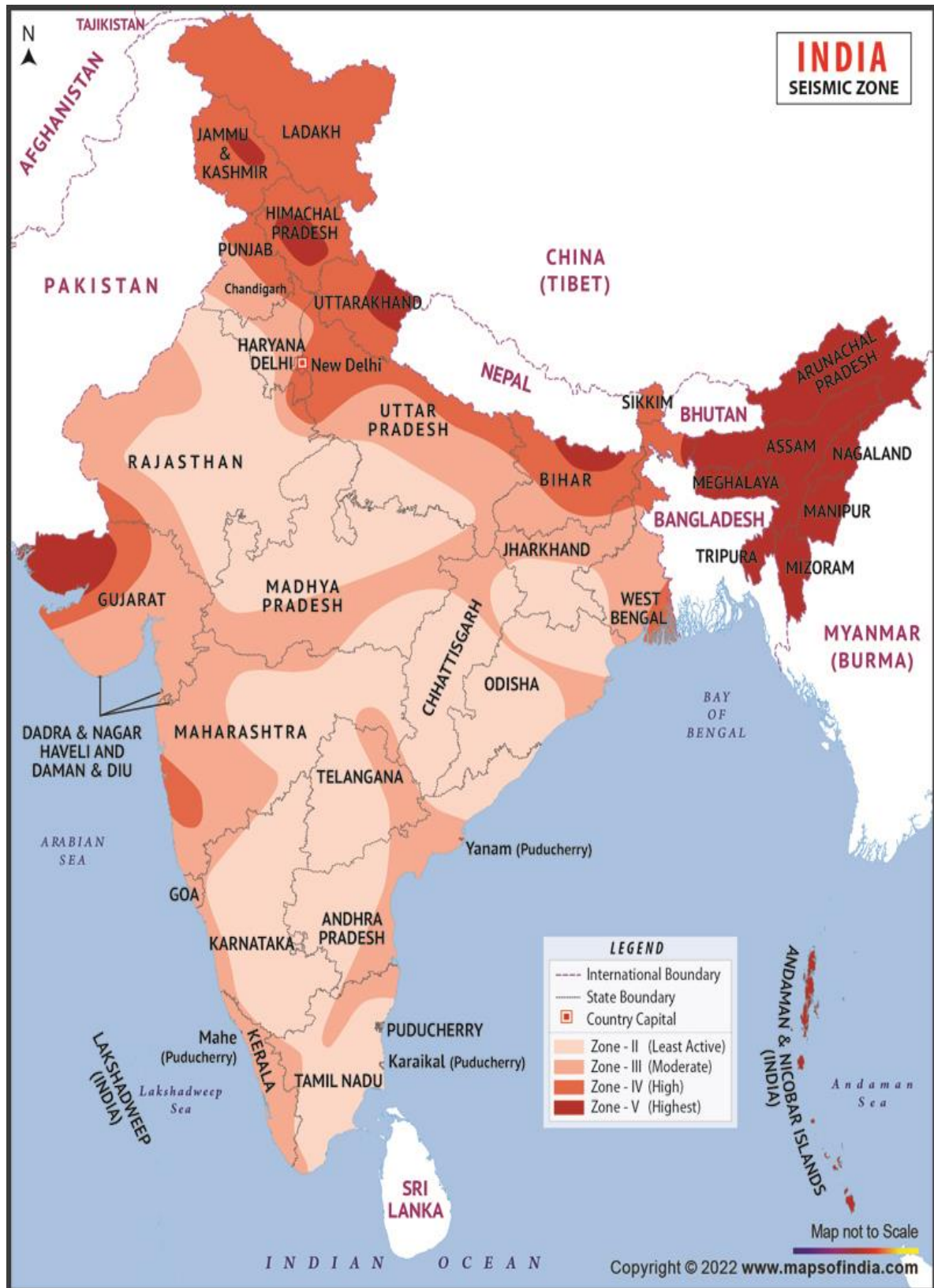
Table 6.2			
Atmospheric	Physical	Aquatic	Biological
Blizzards, Flashing, Tornadoes, Tropical Cyclones, Droughts, Frost, Heat Waves, Etc.	Earthquakes, Volcanoes, Landslides, Avalanches, Snowfall, Deflation, Soil Erosion.	Floods, Tides, Ocean Currents, Storms, Sunamis, Etc.	Plants And Animals As Colonizers (Locusts, Etc.), Insect Pests, Fungi, Bacteria And Viral, Infections, Bird Flu, Dengue, Etc.

Earthquake- The vibration in the surface of the earth is called an earthquake. In Vedic literature, there are signs of earthquakes on the earth. It is mentioned in the Rigveda that- येषामज्मेषु पृथिवी जुजुर्वी इव विस्पतिः। भिया यामेषु रेजते (1.37.8) i.e. the earth trembles like an old and dilapidated king. In one mantra, it is said that अच्युता चिद वो अजन्मा नानदति पर्वतासो वन्स्पतिः। भूमिर्यामेषु रेजते (8.20.5) I.e. O Maruton! The clouds and vegetation that do not fall while going to your battles repeatedly say words, the earth trembles. It is clear from these verses that the Vedic sages were aware of the vibrations of the earth and the damage caused by it. That is why he has wished for a trembling earth in many mantras. Earthquakes occur due to waves arising due to the sudden release of energy in the earth's crust. They are so powerful that they can destroy the entire city in a few moments.

Causes of earthquake- Earthquake occurs due to the waves generated due to sudden release of energy in the earth's lithosphere. They are so powerful that they can destroy an entire city within a few moments. Some causes of earthquake are as follows-

1. Earthquakes occur due to vibrations in the earth due to volcanic eruptions.
2. Rocks located within the earth eventually break down due to excess of heat and pressure. This is also the cause of earthquakes.
3. Earthquake occurs due to the collision of the earth's plates.
4. Earthquakes are also caused by snow quarries, rock slides and falling roofs of caves or mines.

5. Earthquakes occur due to the unbalanced pressure of the seas and oceans.
6. Apart from these, mining activities, over-ground water exploitation, construction of dams, nuclear explosions and underground nuclear tests etc. are also the major causes of earthquakes.



Earthquake Affected States of India- Based on the analysis in India, five seismic zones have been divided into high damage and risk areas, high damage risk areas, medium damage risk areas, low damage risk areas, very low damage risk areas. Earthquakes occur in almost all the states of India, but some states are particularly affected by earthquakes. Jammu and Kashmir, Himachal Pradesh, Uttarakhand, Sikkim, Darjeeling sub-division of West Bengal and seven north-eastern states

Table 6.3		
Earthquake Effects		
Ground Floor	Humanized Structures	On The Water
Cracks, Settlements, Landslides, Liquefaction, Ground Pressure, Possible Chain Reaction	Crack, Shift, Overturn, Contraction, Collapse, Possible Chain Reaction	Waves, Hydrodynamics, Pressure, Tsunami, Possible Chain Reaction

(Assam, Mizoram, Nagaland, Arunachal Pradesh, Manipur, Meghalaya and Tripura) are the worst affected by earthquakes.

Earthquakes have a devastating effect on the animal world. Through this, we get information about the internal structure of the earth. Due to earthquakes, many types of islands and continents are formed. Earthquakes cause destruction of many human and natural infrastructure. The chances of other disasters such as floods, volcanoes, landslides, landslides, etc. increase. Earthquakes cause economic, social and cultural losses.

Earthquake Prevention Measures-

1. A map of the vulnerability of earthquake prone areas in the country should be prepared and people should be made aware by providing information.
2. People should be trained to reduce the effects of earthquakes.
3. Earthquake resistant buildings should be constructed in earthquake affected areas.
4. Construction of big buildings, industrial units, urbanization etc. should not be promoted in earthquake prone areas.
5. Light construction material should be used in earthquake vulnerable areas.

Sunami- in Japanese, a fast-moving sea storm is called a sunami. It is very long and hundreds of kilometers. There are wide waves. Due to sudden movement in the ocean surface from earthquakes and volcanoes, there is a sudden displacement in ocean water. As a result, the oceans produce vertical waves, called sunamis or seismic sea waves. Generally, sunami-prone areas occur in the oceanic coasts, Alaska, Japan, the Philippines, islands of Southeast Asia and Malaysia, and in the Indian Ocean in the coastal areas of Myanmar, Sri Lanka and India. This leads to widespread loss of public money in the coastal areas of these countries.

Due to Sunami- sunami waves are caused by oceanic earthquakes, land subsidence, volcanic eruptions and sometimes flare-ups etc. On December 26, 2004, an earthquake of magnitude 8.9 hit Indonesia, followed by an undersea sunami that caused heavy destruction in many countries including India. Due to this, about 3 lakh people died and many countries of the world suffered huge economic losses. It is an international natural calamity.

Sunami Prevention Measures-

1. There is a need to be careful and alert after earthquakes and volcanoes because immediately after these, the possibility of tsunami in coastal areas is very high.
2. People in coastal areas should move to higher places.
3. We should pay attention to the activities of animals and birds because they give us signals before the occurrence of natural disasters.

Cyclone- The movement of hot and strong winds from outside to inside around low atmospheric pressure is called **cyclone**. The air pressure gradient in a tropical cyclone is very high. The main causes of cyclone are continuous sufficient amount of warm and humid air, strong Coriolis force, instability in the troposphere, absence of strong vertical air fan etc.

Causes and consequences of cyclone- Due to the intense heat of the sun in the sea, the air gets heated and creates an area of low pressure. The air gets heated and quickly becomes saturated with moisture above and condenses to form clouds. To fill the empty space, moist air moves rapidly up and down. As a result, these winds rotate around that area with great speed, causing dense clouds and lightning as well as torrential rains. Cyclones in peninsular India originate in the Bay of Bengal and the Arabian Sea. The source of energy of tropical cyclones is latent heat obtained from warm and humid air. Usually tropical cyclones in coastal areas reach up to 180 km. Collide at a speed per hour. The extraordinary rise of sea water during a storm is called 'storm surge'. It is caused by a combination of storm waves and astronomical tides. Storm surge causes submergence of settlements and fields in coastal areas, resulting in destruction of crops and many types of man-made structures.

Cyclone prevention measures-

1. Information related to the cyclone should be given to the people through television, radio, internet, social media etc. so that people can reach safe places.
2. Wind speed in cyclone is 200 to 300 km. It happens every hour, hence the windows and doors of the houses should be kept closed at this time.
3. Avoid traveling during cyclones.
4. Residents of areas prone to cyclones should build a basement under the house.

Flood- Submergence of surrounding land areas due to temporary excessive water flow in rivers or reservoirs is called '**flood**'. Due to floods in large areas of the world, crops are destroyed and there is huge loss of life and property. The

south-eastern countries of the Asian continent, especially China, India and Bangladesh, are the most flood affected countries.

Causes of floods- Storm Mahormi in coastal areas, prolonged heavy rains, melting of snow, decrease in the depth of land, excess soil erosion, increase in the amount of alluvial soil in the river water etc. are the major causes of floods. Apart from these, other causes of floods include rapid deforestation of forests and vegetation, climate change, unscientific agricultural practices, ever increasing population.

The most flood affected states in India are Assam, West Bengal, Bihar, Eastern Uttar Pradesh (Plains), Tamil Nadu, Andhra Pradesh, Gujarat, Maharashtra etc. Floods have a profound impact on the economy and society of the country due to the sinking of agricultural land, human settlements and destruction of infrastructure. Many types of diseases such as cholera, hepatitis, etc. are spread in flood-affected areas.

Measures taken to control floods in India- 'National Flood Control Programme' (NFCP) was started in 1954 AD for flood control in India. Under this programme, the waterways of rivers were improved by constructing embankments in flood affected areas. Necessary measures were taken to control floods by increasing protection works of nearby human settlements. Construction work was banned in the upper catchment areas of rivers causing floods. Efforts were made to control population in flood affected areas. After the partial success of the 'National Flood Control Programme', the Government of India had established the 'National Flood Commission' under the Ministry of Agriculture and Irrigation in 1976 to study the flood control measures in India. Multipurpose projects run by the government like Damodar Valley, Kosi, Bhakra Nangal, Hirakud, Nagarjun Sagar, Rihand Project etc. have played an important role in flood control. In 1999 AD, the Government of India started work on river interlinking project, the objective of which is to control floods and drought. Under this project, Ken-Betwa Link Project, Damanganga-Pinjal Project, Par-Tapi Narmada Link Project, Mahanadi-Godavari Link Project have been handed over to the Water Resources Ministry.

Drought- Prolonged precipitation, excessive evaporation of water, transpiration, depletion of reservoirs and underground water is called '**drought**'. Drought is a disaster that can last for months or years. Due to continuous drought there is lack of moisture in the soil. Lack of rainfall, climate change, deforestation, non-harvesting of rain water, excessive exploitation of underground water, ecological, social and economic activities etc. are the main causes of drought.

Drought prone areas in India- The basis of India agriculture is monsoon rainfall. Floods and droughts are key elements of our climate system. In India, 19% of the total geographical area is affected by drought every year. Western Rajasthan, most parts of Madhya Pradesh, eastern parts of Maharashtra, interior andhra pradesh, Karnataka plateau etc. fall in the drought affected area.



Consequences of drought- Desert spreads due to drought. In the absence of water, biodiversity migrates to other places and there is a huge competition for food in the ecosystem. In the event of drought, agricultural production decreases, which has a negative impact on the economy. People from drought-prone areas start migrating. Soil erosion increases due to dryness in desert and semi-desert areas. In the absence of clean drinking water, many diseases occur.



Map-6.2 Drought Prone Area Map

Drought Prevention Measures- Irrigation is known as the most effective mechanism to prevent drought and a major measure to stabilize agricultural production. Construction of dams for water storage facilitates irrigation. Jal Shakti Directorate was formed by the Government of India in 2019 AD to deal with the problem of drought and to keep the rivers evergreen. The Ministry is

responsible for international and inter-state water disputes, Namami Gange project, cleaning of Ganga and other rivers and providing clean water.

Landslides- Landslide is a natural disaster. The movement of a group of soil, rocks and vegetation downwards under the influence of slope gradient or earth's gravity is called 'landslide'. The main causes of landslides are gravitational force, erosion by rivers, deforestation, wrong agricultural system, Steep Mountain and coastal slopes, rain water, weathering, erosion, earthquakes, volcanoes, human activities etc.

Know this also-

- In the Disaster Management Act-2005, disaster has been defined as natural or man-made calamity, crisis or serious incident.
- The apex body for disaster management in India is the National Disaster Management Authority (NDMA).

Areas of Landslide in India- Geology, Landforms, Slopes, Useful Land, Vegetation Cover and Human Activity: Landslide areas in India are divided into five parts- Ultra Vulnerability Zone, High Vulnerability Zone, Medium Vulnerability Zone, Low Vulnerability Zone and Other Vulnerability Zones. In the young mountain ranges of the Himalayas, Andaman and Nicobar, Western Ghats and nilgiris, areas with high rainfall, north-eastern region, earthquake-prone areas, there is more landslides.

Consequences of landslides- The effect of landslides is found in a relatively small area. This can lead to serious consequences of road blockades, breakdown of railway tracks and blockages caused by falling rocks in water vessels. Changes in the path of the river due to landslides can cause floods. This makes commuting difficult in these areas and may slow down the pace of development work.

Measures to prevent landslides- Construction of roads and large dams in landslide areas and construction work and development works should be banned. Afforestation should be promoted on a large scale. Agriculture should be done by constructing terraced farms in the north-eastern areas with shifted agriculture.

Question

Multiple Choice Questions-

1. The First sunami attack in India was
 - A. 2004 A.D.
 - B. 2011 AD.
 - C. 1948 AD.
 - D. 1988 AD.
2. Atmospheric disasters in the following is
 - A. Drought
 - B. Floods
 - C. Earthquakes
 - D. All these
3. The Bhopal gas tragedy occurred in
 - A. In 1981
 - B. In 1982
 - C. In 1983
 - D. in 1984
4. The National Flood Commission was established in India in the year
 - A. 1971 A.D.
 - B. 1976 AD.
 - C. 1977 AD.
 - D. 1978 AD.



Fill in the blanks-

1. Sunami is a Disaster. (Anthropogenic/Natural)
2. Of water spreads the desert/drought. (Deficiency/excess)
3. The National Flood Control Programme in India was established
In..... (1954 /1974 AD)
4. Jal Shakti Ministry in India was created in..... (2014 /2019 AD)

Write the true/ false-

1. Rajasthan is not among the drought-affected states in the country. (True/False)
2. Vibrations in the surface of the earth are called earthquakes. (True/False)
3. In the year 2004, there was a severe sunami in Indonesia. (True/False)
4. The apex body of disaster management in India is the National Disaster
Management Authority. (True/False)

Match the pair correctly-

- | | |
|-------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. Atmospheric Disaster | A. Tides |
| 2. Physical Disaster | B. Dengue, Bird Flu |
| 3. Aquatic Disaster | C. Landslide |
| 4. Biological Disaster | D. Taadit Jhanjha |

Very short answer questions-

1. What is a disaster?
2. Name the earthquake affected states in India.
3. What is sunami?
4. Name the most flood affected states in India.

Short Answer Questions -

1. Explain the causes of earthquakes and measures to prevent it.
2. Mention the causes of floods.
3. Suggest ways to control drought.
4. Explain the landslide and its causes.

Long Answer Questions -

1. What is a flood? Describe in detail the flood control measures in India.
2. Mention the causes, consequences and measures of landslides.

Project-

1. Show the areas affected by earthquake, flood, drought and sunami in the map of India.



Ved Vibhushan

1st Year

History



Chapter- 7

Early Society

(360 Million Years to 1st BC)

In this chapter - origin and development of human, various species of human, emergence and gradual development of human on the earth, opinions related to the development of modern human, life of early human, Mesopotamian civilization, trade, development of writing art, Southern Mesopotamia.

Origin and development of humans- You will be surprised to know that how did humans, who lived in caves, forests or rock shelters for millions of years, start living in villages and cities? About ten thousand years ago, humans abandoned their nomadic life and started living at one place for farming. Anthropologists believe that about 56 lakh years ago, such creatures had appeared on Earth, whom we can call humans, but with time they had become extinct. Modern humans originated approximately 1, 60,000 years ago. From the origin of modern man to about 8000 years BC. The history of human development till now has been full of many ups and downs. In the early stages of development, humans were dependent on hunting animals, roots, fruits and seeds from trees and plants for their sustenance. During the development of civilization, humans gradually learned to communicate with each other and make tools from stones. We get information about the history of early humans from fossils, remains of stone tools and cave paintings etc. found in various excavations and discoveries.

Know this also-

- Millions of years ago, the animals and plants that got buried in the ground, their remains or traces which are found during excavation are called fossils.

Various species of humans- There has been a gradual evolution of humans, evidence of which we get from the fossils of human species. The evidence of any extinct animal or plant being alive at some time is called 'fossil'. The offspring obtained from the reproduction of males and females of the same group is called 'species'. It is a biological concept, which can be identified on the basis of physical appearance and mental traits on the basis of ancestry in various human groups. Since the beginning of human development, various species of humans lived in India. Ritzel has mentioned seven major races inhabiting the Indian Peninsula - 1. Dravidian 2. Indo-Aryan 3. Mongoloid 4. Indo-Dravinian 5. Mongol-Dravinian 6. Syrian 7. Turko-Iranian.

Origin and gradual development of humans on Earth- In the context of the origin of humans, it is said that the 'Primate' branch of mammals first emerged in Asia and Africa about 360 years ago. 240 lakh years ago, a sub-group emerged in the primate category, which was called 'hominoid'. This sub-group also included 'vanars' (apes) and evidence of the existence of modern humans



has been found about 56 lakh years ago. The hominid human group evolved from the hominid subgroup. There were similarities as well as differences between

Know this also-

- *Homo habilis* fossils have been found at Omo in Ethiopia and Olduvai Gorge in Tanzania. The fossils of *Homo erectus* have been obtained from both the continents of Asia and Africa. The fossils of *Homo sapiens* have been obtained from the continent of Europe and Africa.
- Primates are a subgroup of the larger group of mammals. Members of this group have hair in their body, such as humans, monkeys etc.
- Organisms having larger body and different from monkeys were called hominoids. These types of creatures do not have tails.
- In Hindi language, genus is called Vansh.

hominid and hominoid, such as the brain of hominid was larger than that of hominoid. Hominids walked upright with both legs. Because of their special kind of hands, they could make tools. Hominoids were quadrupeds, whose forelimbs were flexible. The hominid group originated in Africa, which were members of the family called Hominidae. The hominid class was divided into several branches, which were called 'genus'. Two groups named 'Australopithecus' and 'Homo' are important in the genus. There were many differences between *Australopithecus* and *Homo*. The size of the brain of *Australopithecus* was larger than that of *Homo*. The jaws and teeth of the *Australopithecus* group were also larger. Although these include both males and females. Scientists have also divided *Homo* into several species and given different names according to their characteristics, such as *Homo habilis*

(tool makers), *Homo erectus* (stands straight and walks on legs) and *Homo sapiens* (intelligent or Contemplative human being).

Category and sequence division of human development-

Primate Category

Hominid

Australopithecus (extinct)

Homo habilis

Homo Erectus

Homo

Homo Sapiens

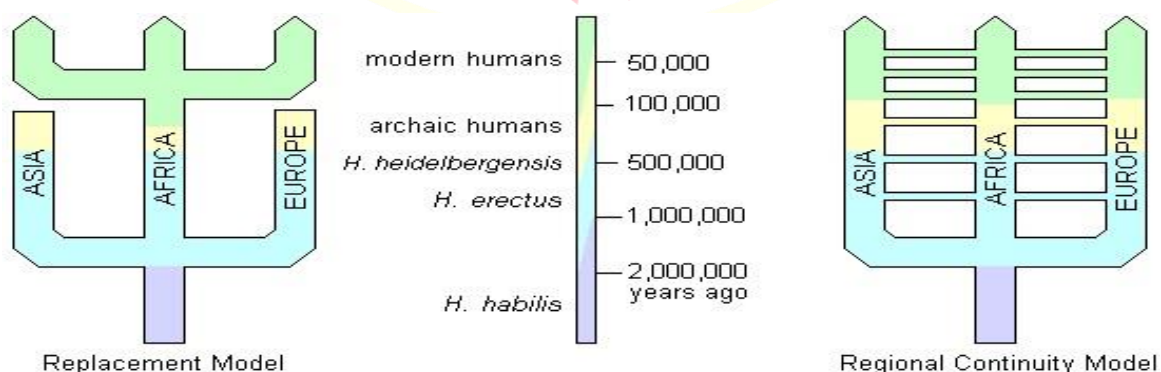


Figure- 7.1- Regional Continuity and replacement model

Life of early man- Primitive man used to roam in the forests in search of food in groups. In the early period of human development, he lived in caves. He used to survive by hunting and eating fruits and flowers. Gradually humans learned to light fire with stones and protected themselves from the fear of wild animals by lighting fires outside the caves. Later, humans learned to make tools and utensils from stones. In ancient times, humans used stones extensively for their survival and sustenance, agriculture etc., hence this period is called 'Stone Age'. Stone Age humans used different methods to obtain food, the main methods of which were gathering, hunting, scavenging, fishing. For primitive humans, animals were mobile food stores.

Dwelling in trees, caves and open spaces- the life of primitive man was

Know this also-

- **Collection** - The general meaning of collection is to collect. Early humans used to collect various sources like fruits, seeds, kernels, tubers etc. for their food.
- **Hunting-** The primitive man used to get his food by hunting also. We have got many proofs of this. He started eating animals by killing them or scraping the flesh of animals that died for some reason. Fishing was an important way of obtaining food. Fish bones and things related to them have been obtained from many ancient sites.
- **Apamarjan-** Apamarjan means to clean the abandoned or abandoned things.

almost like that of a wild creature. He used to cover his body with palm leaves or animal skin to protect himself from cold, heat or rain. The first period of development of early man is called the Stone Age, during this period man used to make the things he needed from stone. Primitive man had learned to light fire by hitting stones together. The discovery of fire brought revolutionary changes in human life. After stone,

perhaps the first metal discovered by humans was copper. He started making and using copper tools and utensils. This period was called the Chalcolithic period. Now humans had started living in caves by cutting stones, which are called 'rock shelters'. Apart from caves, humans used to build their houses on trees for their safety. Over time, he became proficient in building different types of houses. Now gradually humans became aware of kinship, affection, love and nurturing of family members and community, and also started agriculture. This same nature of collective security of human beings is seen even today in the form of family and society.

Know this also-

- Mesolithic caves were discovered in 1957-58 AD by Dr. Vishnu Shridhar Wakankar in a place called Bhimbetka in Madhya Pradesh, India. There is a wide range of seven hills, where there are about 500 caves or rock shelters, in which people once lived.



Tools of early man- Early man used to make his tools from stones, wood, animal



Fig. 7.2 Tools used by early

bones and horns. Stone tools were mostly made from flint stones. Among these tools, hammers, axes, axes, spears, axes etc. were prominent. In its early stages, man used uncut stones as tools. In the course of development, he had learned to attach handles to tools made of stone. After the discovery of metals, he now learned to make and use metal tools. Humans often used these tools for hunting and protecting themselves from animals, cutting wood, digging roots, agricultural activities etc. Skillful use of the hand was possible due to human physical and possibly neurological adaptations. About 35,000 years ago, the methods of hunting wild animals also started changing. Now new types of tools like throwing spears and bows and arrows started being made. There were gradually major changes in human lifestyle. Now he started using animal skins as clothes to protect himself from cold. Technology started being

used to make small tools like needles, chisels, awls for sewing clothes. With these fine tools it became easier to carve and scrape bone, ivory or wood.

Medium of communication- Language is a medium through which a human

being presents his thoughts to others. Among all the creatures in the world, man is the only creature who has written and oral language as a powerful medium to express his feelings. Scholars are not unanimous regarding the development of language. According to one theory, hominid language included gestures or hand

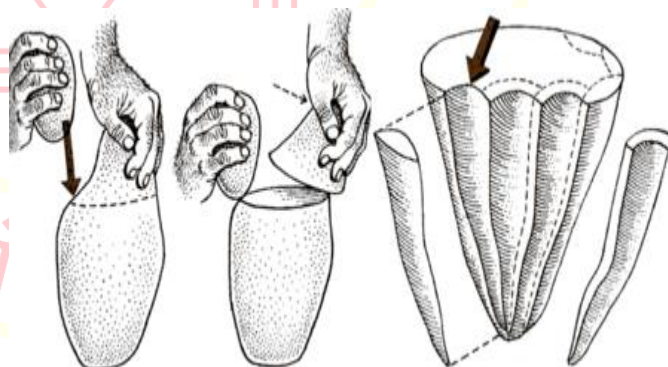


Fig. 7.3 Punch Blade Technique

movements. In the second opinion, before spoken language, verbal or non-verbal communication like singing or humming was used. According to the third opinion, human speech probably originated from the act of calling or calling, as is seen in humans and other creatures. Due to the development of language and art, humans started living in settlements. Gradually human settlements started developing in the form of rural and planned cities. We will study human

settlements and urbanization in the development of human civilization under 'Mesopotamian Civilization'.

Mesopotamian Civilization- Mesopotamia is a part of the present Republic of Iraq and due to its location in the Doab of Tigris and Euphrates rivers, this area was very fertile. Mesopotamia was famous since ancient times for its prosperity, vast and rich literary tradition, urban life, astronomy etc. Mesopotamian civilization is considered contemporary with Saraswati-Indus civilization and culture of India. Archaeological discoveries in Mesopotamia began in the 1840s. Archaeological sources have revealed that in terms of development of human civilization in Mesopotamia between 7000-6000 BC. Agricultural work had started in the middle of the century. The residents here used to get milk, wool and meat etc. from animal husbandry. It is believed that this civilization remained dominant till the fall of Kabul in about 539 BC.

Urban civilization is considered to have started from Mesopotamia. The main cities of Mesopotamian civilization were- Uruk, Nippur, Nineveh, Assur, Babylonia, and Erdu. These cities are important centers of trade, production and many other types of services, but the residents of the cities were dependent on the villages for many types of services.

Know this also-

- The earliest evidence of stitched clothing is about 21,000 years old.
- Anthropology- It is called Anthropology in English. It is a subject in which the evolution of human culture and human biology is studied.

It is clear from this that these cities were important centers of economic activities. Needy people coming from rural areas could easily get employment in cities.

Trade- Advanced trade system was developed in Mesopotamian civilization. Mesopotamians used to import copper, silver, gold, tin, shells and various types of stones from countries like Turkey, Iran, and India etc. In return the Mesopotamians exported cloth and other agricultural products. The best means of transporting goods in Mesopotamia and its surrounding areas were canals and natural streams.

Development of the art of writing- The earliest tablets found from Mesopotamia date back to around 3200 BC. Is of. The residents here used tablets made of clay for writing. About 500 lists of names of objects like oxen, fishes and loaves etc. have been received from Mesopotamia. The oldest known language here was Sumerian, which originated around 2400 BC. After that the Akkadian language took over. The work of writing must have started with the maintenance of permanent accounts by the people of the society. It is clear from this that writing style had developed in Mesopotamian civilization. The remains found show that the Mesopotamians had to learn hundreds of symbols



Fig- 7.4 Cuneiform Script

Know this also-

- In cuneiform script, writing was done on wet clay tablets with nail-shaped reeds etc. on both sides. The cuneiform script was deciphered in 1850 AD.
- At present, the knowledge of dividing the year into 12 months, month into four weeks, one day into 24 hours and one hour into 60 minutes etc. was received by Arabs and Europeans from Mesopotamia.

for writing and had to write them on a wet tablet before it dried. Writing work was considered very important. Most of the population of Mesopotamia was not literate. There was a beautiful city 'Uruk' in Mesopotamia. Enmerkar, the famous ruler of Uruk, is described in a Sumerian epic. It is said that Enmerkar sent his messenger to the ruler of Aratta to bring lapis lazuli and other precious gems and metals. But because the messenger could not present his message well to the ruler there, he returned empty handed. Then Enmerkar made a clay tablet with his own hands and wrote his words on it. It is from here in Mesopotamia that the art of writing is considered to have started in the form of

cuneiform script.

Southern Mesopotamia- Settlements in Southern Mesopotamia developed around 5000 years BC. It started happening from. Gradually some of these settlements took the form of ancient cities. In the cities of Southern Mesopotamia, three categories of cities have been found - 1. Cities developed around temples, 2. Commercial cities, 3. Royal cities. In the excavation of Mesopotamian ancient



Figure- 7.5 3000 B.C. found from excavation in Mesopotamia. A temple of

site, a temple has been found, which was made of raw bricks. At that time various types of gods and goddesses were worshiped in temples. The residents here used to bring food, curd, fish etc. to offer to the gods and goddesses. These facts strengthen the Mesopotamian civilization being a part of the ancient Indian civilization and culture. It seems that in the course of time, the temple culture prevalent

in Mesopotamia in the past would have been destroyed with the rise of new ideologies and their establishment as religion. Archaeological sources have shown that the nuclear family was considered ideal in Mesopotamian society. An upper or elite class had emerged in the social system of cities. 'Tax' system was prevalent in Mesopotamia. The town-planning of Mesopotamia was not as systematic (town-planning) as that of the Harappa and Mohenjodaro civilizations of the Indian Peninsula. In Mesopotamia, a city named 'Mari' was highly developed as a royal capital. Here both farmers and herders Different types of people lived there. Most of this region of Mesopotamia was used as pasture. The

residents of Mesopotamia gave more importance to urban life. It is told in the epic 'Gilgamesh' that the residents here were proud of their cities. Mesopotamian civilization is considered to be a Bronze Age civilization. Later, Sumerian, Akkadian, Babylonian and Assyrian civilization and culture developed here, which are known as big empires in history.

Table 7.1	
Timeline 1 From early human development to Mesopotamian civilization	
360-240 million Years ago	Primate era
240 million Years ago	Homonoid age
26-25 million Years ago	Stone tools invented
3 lakh Years ago	First evidence of burial of dead bodies
1.9-1.6 million Years ago	Homo sapiens
2-1.3 lakh Years ago	Skull of early Homo sapiens in Narmada valley
5000 BC	Temple Construction in Mesopotamia
1000 BC.	Use of iron
326 B.C.	Death of Alexander

Question

Multiple Choice Questions-

- Which of the following is included in the primate sub-group?
 - Manav
 - Awanr
 - Langur
 - All of the above
- Which of the following means Homo sapiens?
 - Tool-makers
 - Those who stand up and walk on their feet
 - A man with a big head
 - A wise or thoughtful person
- In which of the following states are the famous caves of Bhimbetka located?
 - Gujarat
 - Chhattisgarh
 - Madhya Pradesh
 - Rajasthan
- Mesopotamia is currently a part of which republic?
 - Iran
 - Iraq
 - Saudi Arabia
 - India
- Which of the following family systems was prevalent in Mesopotamia?
 - Single family
 - joint family
 - None of the
 - above two

Fill in the blanks-

- The oldest known language of Mesopotamia was..... (Sumerian/Akkadi)
- Hominido originated in..... (Africa/America)
- Human beings appeared on the earth about.....Years ago.
(56 lakh/60 lakh)
- The archaeological discoveries of Mesopotamia bega in.....1960s.
(1840 AD/1931 AD)



Write the true/ false-

1. Mesopotamia is located between the Dajla and Euphrates rivers. True/False
2. The primant category of creatures originated in North America. True/False
3. Hominido originated in Africa. True/False
4. The archaeological site Bhimbetka is in the state of Madhya Pradesh. True/False

Very short answer questions-

1. When did homonid originate?
2. Write the definition of Stone Age.
3. When did agriculture start in Mesopotamia?
4. Which metals were imported into Mesopotamia?
5. Which famous city became famous as the royal capital?

Short Answer Questions-

1. What is life?
2. How did fire affect humans?
3. For what purposes did primitive humans use tools?
4. Describe the urban life of Mesopotamia.

Long answer questions-

1. Explain in detail the ways in which early humans get food.
2. What do you know about the habitat of early human beings? Make it clear.

Project-

1. Draw a timeline for the development of primitive human beings.

Chapter 8

Major Empires of the World (100 AD-1300 AD)

In this chapter- Roman Empire, rise of Islam in Arabia, expansion of rule and civil war of Caliphs, Abbasid Revolution, Crusade, economy, education and culture, Vedas are the root of all the thought, religion and science of the world, the nomadic empire.

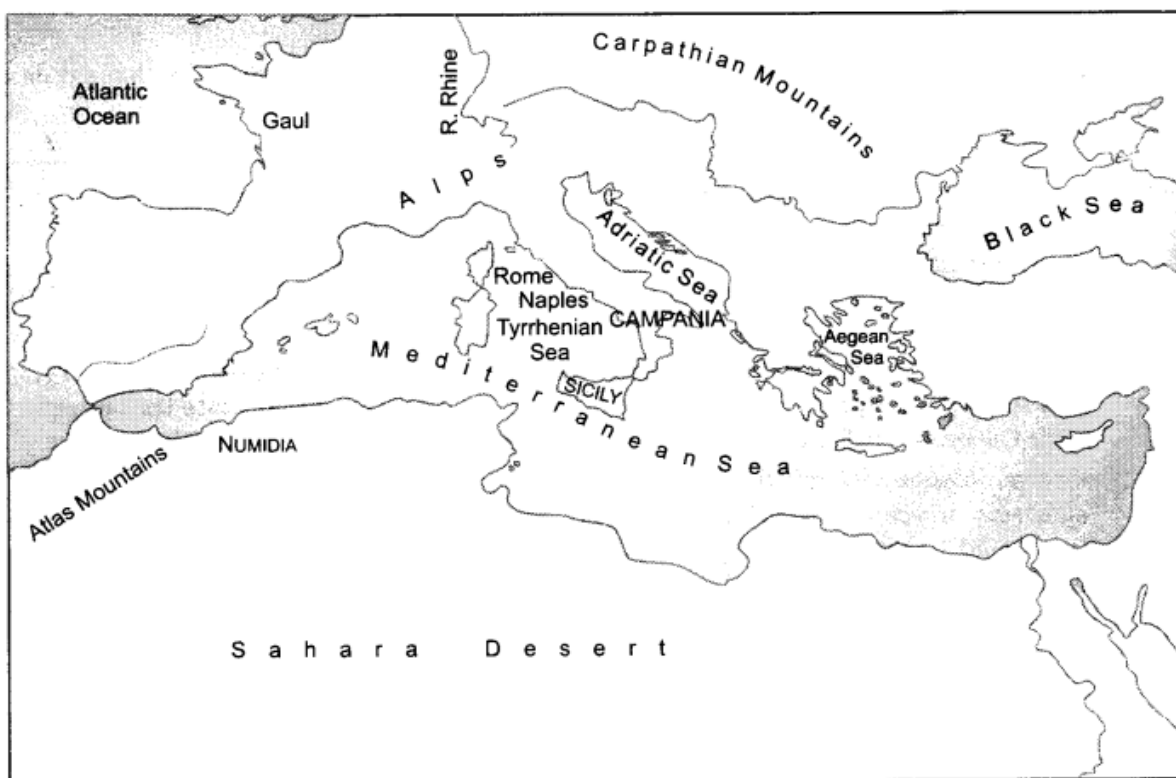
Nearly two thousand years after the establishment of the empire in Mesopotamia, efforts were being made to build empires in the east and west of Mesopotamia as well. In the sixth century BC, with the Iranians gaining control over most of Assyria, trade relations developed along land routes and in the Mediterranean region. Greek civilization and culture developed around the 8th century BC. In the late fourth century BC, Macedonian ruler Alexander conquered North Africa and Iran and reached the Vyas River in India. After the death of the famous Greek ruler Alexander (326 BC), due to the division of the huge Greek Empire, new empires were established in Europe, Africa and Central Asia. The Roman and Islamic empires were prominent among these empires.

Rome Empire- The vast Roman Empire extended across three continents. The Roman Empire included a large part of present-day Europe, Western Asia and North Africa. Under this empire, institutions related to many religious, intellectual and cultural traditions emerged, which became the cause of political, cultural, religious etc. changes. In the Roman Empire, a large part of the economy ran on the basis of slave labour. We get information about this empire from sources obtained from excavations, textual materials, documents, physical remains etc.

Republican governance system was prevalent in the early Roman Empire. In the first century AD, the Roman Empire under Julius Caesar extended to Britain and Germany. Emperor Augustus in 27 B.C. Monarchy was established in Rome. The first and second centuries of the Roman Empire were a symbol of peace, prosperity and economic expansion. But in the third century the Roman Empire began to disintegrate. The Sassanid dynasty of Iran and the tribes of Germanic origin had attacked Rome several times and established their control over many provinces. By the 5th century the Roman Empire was destroyed. At the time of the fall of the Roman Empire, many tribal states were established in the eastern border.

The Late Roman Empire describes the final story in the history of the rise and fall of Rome, which flourished primarily between the fourth and ninth centuries. In the ninth century, Charlemagne united the church-inspired states and established the Holy Roman Empire, which was seen as a revival of the Ancient Roman Empire. Between the 7th and 15th centuries, the Arabs took control of most of the territory of the Eastern Roman Empire.





Map- 8.1 Roman Empire

Roman Society- The nuclear family system was dominated in Roman society. Along with the dominance of the male class in the society, the condition of women was good and they had rights in ancestral property. Even after marriage, both husband and wife had financial independence. There was a lot of cultural and social diversity in Roman society. In the early period of this empire, the main three classes of society were emperors,

Elites and army. In course of time, the society was divided into several social categories– the first class was the senator and the equestrian, which was

The respected class of the masses. They belonged to great families. The second class was accustomed to watching circuses, theaters, and spectacles. The third class was the slave class. Slavery was dominant in the Roman Empire. Slaves were treated inhumanely. Slaves were considered a means of capital investment. This can be gauged from the fact that at that time there were more than 30 lakh slaves in Italy's population of 75 lakh. The main language of the Roman Empire was Latin. Yet in its east areas were Aramaic, in the northwest there was Caltic, in Egypt Kaptik, in North Africa there was a prevalence of Punic language.

Economic expansion- The Roman Empire was very strong economically. Most of the area here was suitable for agriculture. Apart from this, there were brick kilns, olive oil factories, ports etc. Who had an important contribution in the

Know this also-

- The containers through which liquids were transported in the Roman Empire were called 'Amphorae'.

economic prosperity of this place? The trade and banking system here was excellent and excellent.

Religious Status- Christianity was made the state religion in the Roman Empire by the ruler Constantine. The Romans were polytheists, their main gods and goddesses were Juno, Jupiter, Minerva, Mars etc. During this period of the Roman Empire, religious conversion of people was carried out at the cultural level.

Table 8.1	
Major events of the Roman Empire	
Principate established by Octavian becomes Augustus and end of the Republic	27 BC
Jewish revolt, Roman armies capture Jerusalem	66-77 AD
Establishment of Sasanian dynasty in Iran	224 AD
Constantine, the sole ruler of the Roman Empire, founded the city of Constantinople.	324 AD
Important victories of Arabs over Syria, Palestine, Egypt, Iraq, Iran etc.	633-42 AD
Arab invasion of Spain	711 AD

Rise of Islam in Arabia- From 600 AD and 1200 AD, the vast area from Egypt to Afghanistan was the core area of Islamic civilization. Before the rise of Islam, Arabian societies were divided into tribes. Polytheism and idol worship was prevalent among these tribes, hence during this period there was unrest due to mutual fights among the tribes here. The Prophet Muhammad preached the worship of one God, Allah, and membership in a single community of believers, to establish unity in society, which was the core of Islam. In 612 AD, Prophet Muhammad declared himself the messenger (prophet) of God (God). Due to strong opposition from the Arabic rich people, Prophet Muhammad had to leave Mecca with his followers in 622 AD and go to Medina, which is called 'Hijra' in Islam. The followers who accept the religious principles of Muhammad are called Muslims. The holy book of Islam is Quran.

Expansion of rule and civil war of the Caliphs- After the death of Prophet Muhammad in 632 AD, there was no other legitimate prophet of Islam, due to which deep differences had arisen among the followers of Islam. To resolve these differences, an institution called 'Khilafat' was created whose leader was called the representative (Caliph) of the

Know this also-

- The inhabitants of the Arabian Peninsula, southern Syria and Mesopotamia are called Arabians. Muhammad Sahab was born in Mecca in 570 AD in the Quraysh clan. His clan had authority over the Kaaba (cubic structure), the main shrine of Mecca. The year (in 622 AD) when Prophet Muhammad arrived in Madina, the Muslim calendar i.e. Hijri year started from that year.



Prophet. The institution of 'Khilafat' had two main objectives – firstly to establish control over the tribes. Second, to raise resources for the state. Due to the differences that arose among the Arab tribes regarding the political expansion and unification of the 'Caliphate' in Arabia, division started, which gradually took the form of civil war. After this civil war, the period of strengthening of Islam began under the Umayyads, a prosperous dynasty of the Quraysh clan.

Centralization of Umayyad and Monarchy- Muawiya, the first Caliph of the Umayyad dynasty, made Damascus his capital. Muawiya started the tradition of hereditary succession. This dynasty kept the rule centralized in its hands for 90 years. The Umayyads established Arabic society and the Arabic language as a social and administrative identity.

Abbasi Revolution- In 750 AD, the Umayyad dynasty came to an end after the movement called Dawa. Now the power was taken over by the Meccan Abbasids, who were descendants of Prophet Mohammed's uncle Abbas. The Abbasids made Baghdad their capital. Under Abbasid rule, Arab influence declined while the importance of Iranian culture increased. The Abbasid Empire had become weak by the ninth century. The biggest reason for this was the lack of control of Baghdad over the remote provinces. The second major reason for the collapse was the infighting between pro-Arab and pro-Iranian factions in the bureaucracy. With the rise of the Turkish Sultanate in the 10th–11th centuries, a third ethnic group was added to the Arabs and Iranians. The Turks were a nomadic tribal people of the Central Asian grasslands of Turkistan who gradually adopted Islam.

The dissolution of the Caliphate and the rise of the Sultanates- the Abbasid Empire had weakened by the ninth century. The biggest reason for this was the lack of control of Baghdad over remote provinces. The second major reason for its collapse was the conflict between pro-Arab and pro-Iran groups in the bureaucracy. Later in the 10th-11th century the rise of the Turkish Sultanate had connected a third ethnic group with Arabs and Iranians. The Turkic people were nomadic tribesmen of the Central Asian grasslands of Turkistan, who gradually converted to Islam.

Crusades- Arabia and Islam had expanded widely during the medieval period. The Arab Empire also included those areas which were once ruled by the Byzantine Empire. Jerusalem, the holy land of Christians, was conquered by the Arabs in 638 AD. The medieval Islamic community called Christians 'people of the book'. Because they had to have their own scripture 'New Testament' or 'Injil. In the 11th century, hostility between Muslims and Christians deepened as Normans, Hungarians and some Slavic peoples were converted to Christianity. In the medieval period, the war waged by European Christians against Islamic states was called the Crusades. There were three religious wars between 1095 and 1291 AD-

- **First Crusade (1098-1099 AD)** - In this crusade, the armies of France and Italy killed Muslims and Jews and established their hegemony over Jerusalem.



Map- 8.2 Arab Empire

- **Second Crusade (1145 AD-1149 AD)** - In this crusade, the German and French armies unsuccessfully tried to take control of Damascus. During this war, Jerusalem was again occupied by the Muslims.
- **Third Crusade (1189 AD-1291 AD)** - In the Third Crusade, Egypt's nominal rulers drove all Christians out of Palestine.

Economy- The main occupation of the Arabs was agriculture. The owners of the land were farmers. Supreme control over agricultural land was in the hands of the state. The source of most of the state's income was land revenue. The land conquered by the Arabs, over which they had authority, was called 'Kharaj land'. Arabs used to export cotton, orange, banana, watermelon, brinjal etc. to Europe. With the increase in the number of cities in the Arab region, Islamic civilization continued to develop. Many new cities were established, in which Arab soldiers (the backbone of the administration) were settled. For five centuries the Arabs and Iranians monopolized maritime trade with China, India and Europe. There were two main trade routes during this period – the Red Sea and the Persian Gulf. Spices, clothes, porcelain items, gunpowder etc. from India and China were brought by ships to Aden and Edhab (Red Sea ports) and Siraf and Basra (Persian Gulf ports). From these ports, goods were transported by camels to the warehouses of Baghdad, Damascus and Aleppo.

Education and Culture- The initial center of Islam religion was the land of Arabia. The religious and social experiences and thinking of Islamic thinkers deepened when they came in contact with other people. Now Islamic thinkers compiled and acquired diverse knowledge to understand the mystery of creation, the ideal social life in Islam and to strengthen the identity of the Islamic

community as well as to satisfy intellectual curiosity. The scholars who recorded the sayings and actions of Prophet Muhammad and wrote commentaries on the Quran were called 'Ulema'. The law that controls Muslim society through religious rituals and social activities in accordance with Islam is called 'Sharia'. By the eighth-ninth century, four branches of Islamic law had emerged - Maliki, Hanafi, Shafi'i and Hanbali. Among these, Hanbali was extremely conservative. The group of people following the religious ideas of medieval Islam were called 'Sufis'. Sufism gave a tough competition to orthodox Islam. In the schools of Alexandria, Syria and Mesopotamia, along with religious subjects, Greek philosophy, mathematics and medicine were also taught in Arabic language. The Umayyad and Abbasid Caliphates had Christian scholars translate Greek and Syriac language books. During the reign of Almamun, translation developed into a planned activity. Books written in Sanskrit language on astronomy, mathematics and medicine were also translated into Arabic language at this time. When these books reached Europe, interest in philosophy and science was aroused among the Europeans. In fact, this knowledge tradition is completely Indian knowledge tradition, which spread across the world in different languages through translation, for example even today Indian numbers are known as Arabic numbers.

Know this also-

- Bayazid Bistami (Iranian Sufi) was the first Sufi who preached to merge oneself in God.

The basis of all the religious sects of the world is 'Sanatan Dharma'-Vedas are the basic source of all the thoughts, Dharma and science of the world. The thoughts related to the creation of the universe and other knowledge-science related thoughts contained in the Vedas are eternal. In Manusmriti, it is said about this eternal knowledge, "वेदात् सर्वं प्रसिध्यति, वेदे सर्वं प्रतिष्ठितम्" That is, all knowledge-science is established in the Vedas. Today there are many popular religions and texts related to them in the world. In all of them there are Vedic literature and Sanatan Dharma, eternal and the world's oldest literature and dharma. The concept enshrined in the Vedas, which is inalienable through tradition, creates the best human lifestyle and the best society. Apaurusheya Vanmaya (a source of knowledge beyond human contemplation or creation), the secrets of the creator and creation have been inaugurated in the Vedas. From this point of view, Nasadiya Sukta (10.129) of Rigveda has also been considered important by the scientists, in which the creation of the universe, expansion and development of the universe has been discussed. With reference to the state before creation, it is said that- "न मृत्युरासीद् मृतं न तर्हि न रात्र्या अह्ना आसीत् प्रकेतः । आनीदवातं स्वधया तदेकं तस्माद्भान्यत्र परः किं चनास ॥2॥ Means- there was neither death nor immortality at that time. There was no difference between night and day, there was only Brahma with air-void and self-reliance. Apart from this there was nothing else. "कामसतदग्रे समवर्तताधि मनसो रेतः प्रथमं पदासीत् । सतोबन्धुमसति निरविन्दन् हृदि प्रतीष्या कवयो मनीषा ॥4॥ That is, when the desire for creation arose in the mind of the Supreme Soul, the first seed (origin)



came out, the intelligent ones, by thinking in their inner self through their intellect, denoted the place of origin of the existing thing from the non-existent thing. "तिरश्चीनो विततो राश्मिरेषामधः स्विदासीदुपरि स्विदासीत् । रेतोधा आसन् महिमान आसन् त्वधा अवस्तात् प्रयतिः परस्तात् ॥5॥ That is, the living entity (Bhokta) and the glories (Bhogya) who bear the seed were born. The activities of the bhaktas extended to both the sides (bottom and top). Prayati (consumer) is located above and Swadha (food) is located below.

The description of the creation of the universe, which is the subject of knowledge by western scientists today, is described in the Vedic literature. Presently prevalent religions and many promoters related to them have emerged in a particular period, while Sanatan Vedic religion is beyond time and is a source of teachings for religion promoters. In the history of human civilization, from the evidence obtained from the world's oldest civilizations-Saraswati-Indus civilization and Mesopotamian civilization etc., the similarity in the then social, religious, economic and still valid traditions, indicates the antiquity and global expansion of Sanatan Dharma.

Table 8.2	
Major Events Of The Arab Empire	
Birth Of Prophet Muhammad	570 AD
Prophet Muhammad's First Sermon	610-12 AD
Journey From Mecca To Medina (Hijrat)	622 AD
Umayyad Rule	661- 750 AD
Abbasid Rule	750-945 AD
Religious War	1095- 1291 AD
Mongols Occupy Baghdad	1258 AD

Yayavar Empire- The inhabitants of the steppe grassy areas of Central Asia have been called 'Yayavars'. The nomadic people were basically nomads. He did not create any literature of his own in the first half of the medieval period. Information about their history is obtained from various travelogues. The Yayavar Empire was established as a vast transcontinental empire by the Mongols of Central Asia under the leadership of Genghis Khan in the 13th-14th century. The nomadic empire extended to the continents of Europe and Asia. Genghis Khan transformed the social and political customs of the Mongols and introduced a powerful military system and effective methods of governance. He used to say, 'He has received orders from God to rule the world.' Genghis Khan's entire life was spent in leading and directly conducting war campaigns against China, Turan (Trans Oxiana), Afghanistan, Eastern Iran, Russian steppe regions. Happened. Genghis Khan's grandson Monke had warned French ruler Louis IX that 'There is only one ruler on earth and that is Genghis Khan.' His other grandson Batu conquered Moscow, Poland, Hungary, and Vienna in his campaigns. Had received. The Mongols had dwarfed even the achievements of world-conqueror Alexander with their conquests and empire building.





Map- 8.3 Mongol Empire

Social and political background of the Mongols- There were many social groups in Mongol society, in which pastoralists and hunter collectors were the main ones. The pastoralists reared camels, horses, sheep, etc. Pastoralists lived in the grasslands of Central Asia and hunter collectors lived in Siberian forests. Mongol tribal groups were divided into new military units. A unit consisted of about 10,000 soldiers. Wealthy families were larger and had more cattle and grazing land. For this reason, he had many followers and he dominated the local politics. People used to loot and fight to get livestock. Genghis Khan formed a huge confederation by combining Mongol and Turkish tribes. Due to the resources in the Steppe region, the Mongols and central Asian travelers had to go to their neighboring Chinese inhabitants for trade and barter. This benefited both sides. The travelers used to send prey caught in horses, fur and steppes to China and get agricultural products and iron equipment from there.

Mongols after Genghis Khan- After the death of Genghis Khan, the Mongol Empire was torn apart. His descendants and successors continued to expand the empire even further. In the 13th century, the people of China, Iran and Eastern Europe viewed the

Know this also-

- Genghis Khan was born in 1162 AD near the Onon River in the northern part of modern Mongolia. His childhood name was Temujin. Its father Yesugei, who was the head of the Kiyat clan.
- Genghis Khan, who was engaged in lifelong wars, died in 1227 AD.

Mongols with fear and hatred. Yet as a powerful ruler, Genghis Khan weaved the Mongols into the thread of unity and established a prosperous transcontinental empire. The Mongol rulers had placed people of all castes and religions in their administration as administrators and military forces.

Table 8.3	
Major Events of Yayawar Empire	
Temujin was born in	1197 AD.
Temujin, holding the title of Genghis Khan, declared him the sovereign ruler	In 1206 AD.
Conflict between the successors of Genghis Khan, the establishment of the independent state - Toluyid (Yuan dynasty and Ilkhani kingdom) and the end of	1260 AD - 1368 AD.
Timur's reign, invasion of India from	1370 AD to 1405 AD.
The Republic of Mongolia was founded	In 1921.

Question

Multiple Choice Questions-

- The Roman Empire was established in-
A. 27 B.C. B. 100 B.C. C. 27 A.D. D. 50 A.D.
- The Abbasids made their capital.
A. Jerusalem B. Damascus
C. Baghdad D. Palestine
- Genghis Khan was born in-
A. 1062 A.D. B. 1162 A.D. C. 1150 AD D. 1170 AD
- Yavavar means-
A. Ghumkkad B. Awara C. Tribe D. Species

Fill in the blanks-

-System of governance prevailed in the early Roman Empire.
(Republican/Monarchical)
- Oil containers were calledRome. (Tempera/Amphora)
- Muhammad Sahab was born in..... (570 AD/ 580 AD.
-was the name of Genghis Khan's Father. (Yesujei/Tatar)

Write the true/false-

- The legal position of women in the Roman Empire was highly strong.
True/False
- Slavery was dominant in the Roman Empire.
True/False
- Hijri was started in 622 AD.
True/False
- Genghis Khan was born in Tanzania.
True/False

Match the pair correctly-

- First War of Religion A. 1189 - 1291 AD
- Second Crusade B. 1098 - 1099 AD



-
3. Third War
 4. Yuan dynasty

- C. 1145 - 1149 AD.
- D. 1260 AD - 1368 AD

Very short answer questions-

1. The sources of information about the Roman Empire are divided into which 3 parts?
2. In which continents did the Roman Empire expand?
3. Who was called Sufi?
4. Define the crusade.
5. Who were the Mongols?

Short Answer Questions-

1. Society in the Roman Empire was divided into how many parts?
2. What do you mean by Abbasid revolution?
3. Mention the economy of the Arabian Empire?
4. Introduce the personality of Genghis Khan.

Long Answer Questions-

1. Mention the crusades between Christianity and Islam
2. The basis of all religious sects of the world is 'Sanatan Dharma'. Explain.

Project-

1. Show the ancient Silk Road in the world map.



Chapter 9

Changing landscape of the world (1300-2000 AD)

In this chapter- Cultural changes in France and England, various changes from 11th to 14th century, changing cultural and religious scenario, European Renaissance, clash of cultures, changing economic and political scenario, Australia, Japan and China.

The establishments of the Roman, Islamic and Yawar Empires and their mutual conflicts led to worldwide cultural, economic and political changes over time. We will study these changes under the following points.

French and Cultural Changes in England- The society of France and England at that time was mainly divided into three classes- the clergy, the Elite and the peasant class.

1. **Clergy-** The clergy class had the highest position in the society. These people were unmarried for life. The pastors (popes) had land given by the king, from whom these people could get taxes. The pastors used to collect religious taxes called tithes. In addition, there was another class of Christian society, which lived in monony or abbey (monastery) in solitude outside the church. Men and women were called monks and nuns respectively.



Fig. 9.1 Doge's Palace in Venice in the 15th century

2. **Elite-** The landlords, feudal and wealthy traders of the society were called elites. This class had an important role in the social process. The big landowners and elites were under the king and the peasants were under the land owners. The sennaires/lords protected the slaves. The elite was respected in society. This class had the right to increase its military capability and run currency. In the ninth century, due to frequent local wars in Europe, a new class called knights emerged to increase the horse army.
3. **Peasant class-** The farming class of the society included farmers and laborers. The farming class used to provide sustenance in the society. The two classes

Know this also-

- The bread giving class was called Senor/Lord. His house was called a manor. A piece of land given to a knight by a lord was called a fief.

of peasants were independent peasants and serfs (agricultural slaves). Independent farmers had to work three or more days a week on the land of the first class people. This class also had to contribute to military service. Lord had a monopoly on agricultural slaves.

Know this also-

- The word feudalism is derived from the German word Feud, which means piece of land. French scholar Marc Block was the first scholar to work on feudalism.

Feudalism- Communism emerged in England in the eleventh century. In this system, the land of the state was divided into large landlords.

Various changes from the 11th to the 14th century- In the 11th century, the use of air and water power in Europe led to extensive reforms in the field of agriculture such as changes in the land holding system and the introduction of a three-farm cropping system. In the early 14th century, the economic expansion of Europe was slowed due to population growth, decreased fertility of land, outbreaks of epidemics, a sharp decline in the metal currency due to a decrease in the production of silver mines. As the economic expansion of Europe slowed, the process of establishing new states in the political sphere, organized standing armies and bureaucratic and national tax systems had begun.

Changing cultural landscape- Due to the greater expansion of urban culture in the continent of Europe from the 14th to the 17th century, Rome, Venice, Florence, etc. emerged as new centers of art and learning. Due to the invention of printing in this period, text

material was available to the people. Europeans began to compare themselves to the ancient Greek and Roman Empires. 19th-century historians have also used the term Renaissance, which refers to the cultural changes of that time.

1. **Revival of Italian cities-** Western Europe was changing into a new system of governance due to feudal relations and Eastern Europe byzantine state. Trade between the Byzantine Empire and the Islamic countries had restarted the closed coastal ports of Italy. These changes had aided in the resurgence of Italian culture. The greatest impact of these changes was in the cities of Venice and Geneva.



Map 9.1 - States of Italy

2. **Universities and Humanism-** The first universities in Europe were established in Italy. In these universities, the study of humanistic subjects such as history, policy philosophy, rhetoric, poetry and grammar was first started.

Humanists believed that after many centuries of darkness, they were restoring the true form of civilization.

3. **Arabian Science and Philosophy-** Arabian scholars carefully preserved and translated manuscripts of the past. Most of the Arabic texts were related to natural sciences, mathematics, astronomy, medicine and chemistry. Humanistic subjects were now taught in schools in countries other than Italy. The Spanish-based Arabic philosopher Ibn Rushad attempted to resolve the growing tension between philosophical knowledge and religious beliefs. During this period Ptolemy wrote a book of astronomy known as 'Almazest'.
4. **Art and Printing-** At that time there were many changes in the field of painting, architecture and printing. Which we have learned from the artistic objects obtained from the ruins of ancient Rome and its desolate cities. The development of the technique of coating (painting) made the paintings more

Know this also-

- Michelangelo designed the dome of St Peter's Church. The first printing press was started in 1455 AD by Johannes Gutenberg.

colorful, bright, attractive and realistic. The excellent sense of physiology, line mathematics, physics and beauty had revamped Italian art, which was later called realism. The revival of the architecture of the ancient Roman

Empire led to the development of the classical style of architecture. The classical style was used by popes, wealthy merchants and elites to build their buildings. European merchants and diplomats first became acquainted with this printing technique during their visits to the royal court of the Mongol rulers. With the development of printing, the text material gradually started reaching the people.

5. **Social change-** Due to the weakening of religion in this period, people were more inclined towards materialism. In the materialistic approach, people gave importance to speaking politely, wearing good clothes, looking decent, etc. Public life was dominated by affluent family and elite men. Due to dowry system, many women had to live in churches. Women's participation in public life was negligible. The position of women in the business class was good.

Know this also-

- In Arabic, Plato was known as Aflatun and Aristoril was known as Aristotle.

Changing religious landscape- In the 15th-16th century, many scholars of Europe were attracted to humanistic ideas. People had opposed the church due to the awakening of humanist ideas and the church's greater taxes. Among those taxes was a document called a sin confession? At that time people believed that confession of sin meant the clergy extorting money from people. In 1517 AD, a young monk Martin Luther (Germany) launched a campaign against the Catholic Church and told the people that - 'Man does not need a priest to contact God.' This campaign was called Protestant Reformism. Now people had openly opposed the



policies of the church and the priests. Finally, in many regions of Europe, the Catholic Church allowed Protestants to worship. The rulers of England broke their relationship with the Pope and the King/Queen of England became the head of the church.

European Renaissance- There was a Renaissance in Europe in the 14th

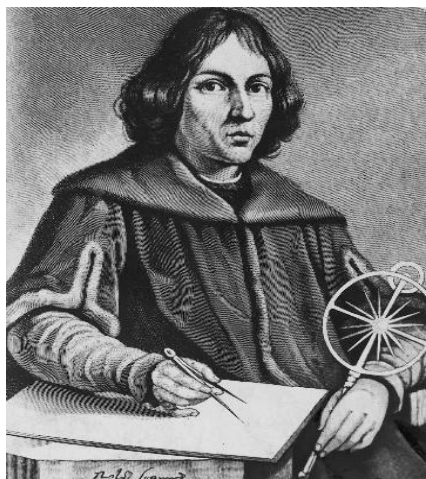


Fig. 9.2 - Copernicus

century. As a result of the Renaissance, many new theories were established. Copernicus (1473 – 1543 AD) refuted the Christian doctrine that "the earth is full of sins, so it is stable", and told the people that 'all planets, including the earth, revolve around the sun'. Galileo, in his book 'The Motion', affirmed the principles of the dynamic world. This revolution touched the height of its height with Newton's theory of gravity. If western thinkers at that time had studied our Vedic literature, they would not have taken credit for formulating this theory. Vedic sages have clarified in their thoughts that the earth

moves around the sun मल्वं बिभ्रती गुरुभृद् भद्रपापस्य निधनं तितिक्षुः । वराहेण पृथिवी संविदानी सूकराय वि जिहीते मृगाय ॥ (अथर्ववेद 12/48) That is, the earth, with the ability to hold the power of gravity, tolerates both virtuous and sinful human beings, while giving good water, as well as removing its dirt from the rays of the sun containing clouds and traveling especially around the sun.

Due to the Renaissance, there were many types of cultural, political, religious, economic, etc. changes in Europe, due to which a large area of the world was connected economically and socially. Due to this mutual engagement and development, there was now competition among cultures.

Know this also-

- Leonardo da Vinci was a famous painter, whose paintings Monalisa and The Universal Last Supper are highly regarded.
- Renaissance first started in Italy.

Conflict of Cultures- Between the 15th and 17th centuries, due to the expansion of European culture in the Caribbean Islands, North and South America, it had a conflict with the native cultures there. We will study this conflict as follows.

1. **Caribbean Islands-** In 1380 AD, the navigation device (in Qutabnuma, China) was invented. The invention of this device, the development of the shipping industry and knowledge of the position of latitude and longitude lines of different regions of Ptolemy made it easier for European sailors to search for sea routes. The second reason for these discoveries was the Ottoman occupation of The Recession and Constantinople caused by the plague and wars in the economy of Europe between the 14th-15th century. Due to the Ottoman occupation of Constantinople, the land route from Europe to the

West Indies (Eastern countries) was closed. Now it had become necessary for Europeans to search for sea routes for the trade of spices, textiles from the Eastern countries. The people of Portugal and Spain were at the forefront of exploring these sea routes. Christopher Columbus (1451-1506 AD) of Spain started this adventure on August 3, 1492. After a long sea voyage, on October 12, 1492, Columbus reached Guanahani Island in the Bahamas Islands. Here the people of the Aravak community welcomed him and his companions. The Archipelagos (Bahamas) in the Caribbean Sea and the Antilles were inhabited by the Arawaki Lukayo and Caribbean communities. The people of the Aravak community lived organized. The practice of polygamy was prevalent among them. They wore gold ornaments and were very generous in nature. Aravaco and his lifestyle were destroyed after coming into contact with the Spanish people.

2. **South America-** Among the local cultures of South America was the Quechua or Inca culture of Peru. The administrative language here was Quechua. Gold and silver were found in abundance in the Inca state. Spain established an empire in South America on the strength of its military power. The settlement of Europeans in South America proved fatal for the inhabitants there. Europeans were capturing and buying slaves from Africa and selling them in the mines and plantations of North and South America, which led to the practice of slavery there. In addition, the Europeans destroyed the manuscripts and monuments of South America.



Map- 9.2 South America

Pedro Alvaris Cabral, a Portuguese resident, sailed for India in 1500 AD, but to escape the stormy seas, he circled West Africa and reached Brazil (South America). The eastern coastline of South America and the forests of trees called Brazil were inhabited by people of the Tupinamba community. Timber was abundant in Brazil, which the Portuguese took great advantage of. Portugal's authority over Brazil was a coincidence.

3. **North America-** The discovery of North America (1492 AD) had many long-term consequences, including in 1519 AD, the Spanish Cortés took control of Mexico after Cuba. There he befriended the Totanac community, who wanted to break away from the rule of the Aztecs. Seeing the invasion of Spanish troops, Aztec ruler Motenjuma panicked and surrendered to Cortes. The Aztec

people settled in the central valley of Mexico. These were included in the elite. These people were involved in government, army and nutrition work. The Maya people had less political power than the Aztecs. Maize cultivation was the main lifeblood of the Maya and Aztec community.

Discoveries in the Caribbean, North and South America had many mixed results, such as the decrease in the population of the natives here due to frequent wars, the destruction of local lifestyles, the increase in slavery, the introduction of Europeans to potatoes, red pepper, etc., and the expansion of international trade and industrialization due to excess of gold and silver. The increase in international trade paved the way for an industrial revolution.

Table 9.1 Sea voyages by Europeans	
Year	Of discovery of sea route
1492	Columbus reached the Bahama Islands
1494	The untold world was divided between Portugal and Spain.
1497	John Cabot discovered the coast of North America.
1498	Vasco da Gama reached Calicut (India)
1499	Amerigo Vespucci discovered the beach of South America.
1522	The Spanish Magellan circumnavigates the earth by ship.

Changing Economic Scenario- After 1300 AD, due to the development of

Know this also-

- The earliest use of the term Industrial Revolution was by Arnold Toynbee in 1884 AD in his book Lectures on the Industrial Revolution in England.
- The time period from 1788 AD to 1796 AD is known as Naharonmad. The foundation stone of 46 new canal projects was laid during this period.
- The first steam-powered train engine was built by Stephenson in 1814 AD.

science and technology in the world, there were revolutionary changes in the field of economy. At the heart of these economic changes was Britain's industrial revolution (from the 1780s to the 1850s). Which we have studied in detail in the previous class.

Changing political scenario-

After the 17th century, countries like France, England, and Holland expanded their trading activities and started establishing their

colonies in America, Asia, and Africa. Dominant nations used to exploit their resources by colonizing small countries for their economic benefit. Between the 18th and 20th centuries, European and Asian immigrants settled in parts of South America, North America, Southern Africa, Australia, and New Zealand. At present, the population of Asians and Europeans in these countries is more than the natives there.

North America- This continent extends from the North Polar Circle to the Tropic of Cancer from the Pacific Ocean to the Atlantic Ocean. It is bordered by the Arizona and Nevada Deserts to the west, the wide plains to the east, and Mexico



to the south. There is a plurality of oil, gas and mineral resources here. From the point of view of agriculture, wheat, maize and fruits are produced on a large scale here. Native Americans lived in villages built around the river valley. The main diet of these natives was meat-fish, corn, vegetables etc. Many languages were spoken in

North America but they were not written. Europeans considered the natives of America to be rude. Gradually, when the Europeans expanded their territories in America, the natives were forced to withdraw from there. The lands of the Native Americans were acquired by fraud and very little money. The natives were criticised for lacking craftsmanship due to laziness. In the east, the natives were displaced to the west, but when minerals like oil, gold, lead started coming out of their land, they were displaced again.

After being liberated from British occupation, there was a development of railway lines, industries, agriculture in North America. Industrial towns had expanded in the United States and Canada. In 1890, the United States became the world's leading industrialized nation. When European traders arrived in North America, they liked the behavior of the local people there. European traders used to give those blankets, iron, utensils, bonds, wine, etc. in exchange for local goods. Local Americans used to consume tobacco, so European traders also started drinking tobacco. In the United States, democratic rights (the right to vote in the election of the president and congressional representatives) and property were both for white people only.

Australia- Aborigenes came to Australia from New Guinea about 40,000 Years ago. In the late 18th century, there were 350 to 750 native communities in Australia. The British first arrived in Australia in 1770. Most of Australia's cities are located around the coastline. Huge sheep farms, mines, vineyards for wine, wheat cultivation, etc. had formed the basis of Australia's prosperity. In 1901, the Australian Union was formed by combining 6 states, whose capital was made

Know this also-

- The French philosopher Rousseau said about the natives of America that these people were admirable because they were untouched by the distortions of civilizations. On July 4, 1776, America became free from British occupation and a new republic called the United States of America emerged in world history.
- 1840 AD In the state of California, USA, when there were signs of gold, thousands of Europeans reached America to get gold. This event is known as Gold Rush in world history.

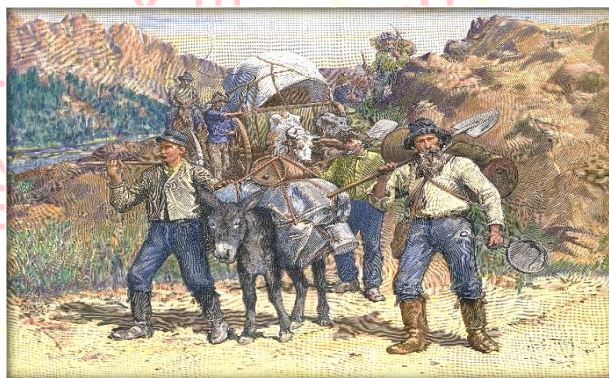


Fig. 9.3 People going to California during Gold Rush

Canberra in 1911 AD. Present-day Australia has a large population of immigrants from Europe and Asia, so since 1974, the state policy here has been given priority to multiculturalism.



Map- 9.3 Australia

Japan- Japan is an island chain country, which is made up of four large islands Honshu, Kyushu, and Shikoku, Hokkaido. In the world, Japan is a highly earthquake-prone nation and rice is the main food crop here.

Political System- Before the 12th century, Japan was ruled by the emperor living in Kyoto. In the 12th century, Shoguno ruled Japan in the name of the king. In Japan, the Tokugawa family held the post of Shogun from 1603 AD to 1867 AD. In this period Japan was divided into 250 parts. The Shoguns were ruled by daimyo. Shoguns used to control Daimyo by ordering them to stay in the capital Addo. The Samurai (warrior class) were the ruling nobles and they served shoguns and daimyos. At the end of the 16th century, Japan underwent three changes aimed at a permanent increase in revenue. At first, only samurai could have swords. Secondly, Daimyo was ordered to stay in the capitals of his territories. Third, the land was surveyed to determine the owners and taxpayers. Japan had become a rich country as a result of these changes. Now he used to import silk from China and cloth from India, paying them in the form of silver and gold.

Menji Restoration- Due to dissatisfaction against the Tokugawa dynasty in Japan, the Menji dynasty was restored in 1867-68 AD. The United States had

Know this also-

- Edo is currently called Tokyo.

established diplomatic and trade relations with Japan to enter the Chinese market. With American help, the Meiji government's grip in governance was strengthened.

Now the Meiji regime had created a new administrative structure and modern military force for the national integration of Japan, taking the army and bureaucracy directly under the control of the emperor. As a result of these reforms, Japan moved forward on the path of progress and later it won the wars with China and Russia. Due to economic progress, Japan was beginning to establish its colonial empire.

Modernization of Japan- In order to modernize the economy in Japan, the expansion of railways, the introduction of banking services, the development of the textile industry, taxes were imposed on agriculture. Industrialization in Japan had led to an increase in the number of factories and laborers. The number of factories in Japan was 1,000 in 1909, which increased to 5, 50,000 in 1940 AD. The development of nationalism in Japan led to the establishment of a constitution with limited suffrage, DIET (Japanese Parliament) and political parties. Prime Ministers were elected in Japan between 1918 and 1931 by public opinion. The people of Japan were highly affected by Westernization, so people had different opinions about it. According to some Japanese intellectuals, America and Western European countries were at the height of civilization, where Japan should also reach. Some believed that Japan should abandon its Asian traits and become part of Western civilization. Some intellectuals used to say that Japan should base democracy rather than the army. Westernization led to many changes in the daily life of the inhabitants of Japan.

Know this also-

- Commodore Matthew Perry (1794–1858 AD) contributed to the growth of Japan American relations.
- The first railway line in Japan (1870-72 AD) was laid between the ports of Tokyo and Yokohama. Banking institutions were started in Japan in 1872 AD.

At the beginning of World War II, Japan began to conquer China and West Asia, which promoted power-centered nationalism in Japan. During this time a seminar called Victory on Modernity was organized in 1943. It discussed the Japanese dilemma of 'how to conquer the West while modern'.

Return as a global economic power- In 1945, the United States destroyed Japan by dropping nuclear bombs on Hiroshima (August 6) and Nagasaki (August 9). After the massive defeat in World War II, Japan rapidly rebuilt its economy, which has been called a post-war miracle. The Olympic Games in Tokyo in 1964 and the operation of the bullet train in 1964 AD show the vibrancy of Japan.

China- China is a huge mountainous country in terms of area. Three major rivers (Yellow River, Yangtze River and Pearl River) flow in the main area here. The main dish of the Han, China's most prominent ethnic group, is dim sum. Many dialects are spoken in China and the main language here is Chinese. Modern China is believed to have originated in the 16th-17th century with western



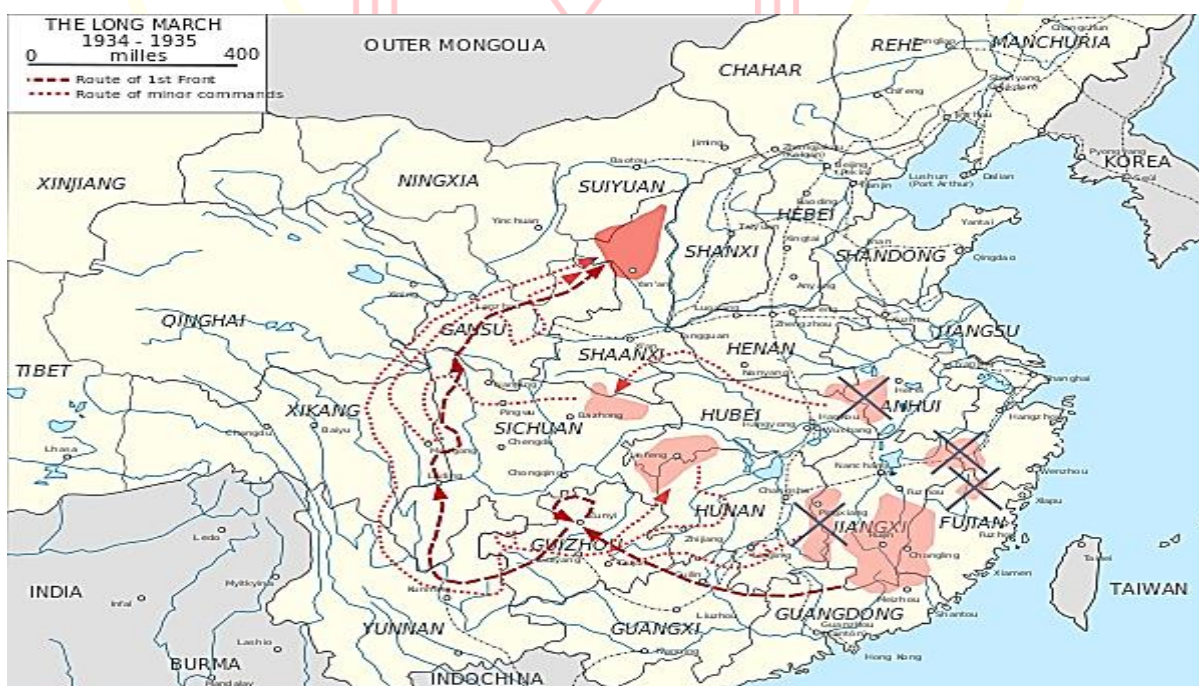
sciences such as astronomy and mathematics arriving there. The first opium war took place between Britain and China Between (1839-42 AD) As a result, there was a demand for reform and change in China. Under these reforms and changes, policies were made for the creation of modern administrative, military, education system. China was previously ruled by the Qing Dynasty, but after a few decades, the Qing Dynasty lost power and civil war started in the country. Finally, in these civil wars, the Chinese Communist Party won in 1949 AD. China's modern history revolves around questions of the recovery of sovereignty, the end of the affront to foreign authority, and the possible ment of equality and development.

Know this also-

- Sun Yat-sen is considered the founder of modern China.

Establishment of a Republic- the Republic of China was established in 1911 AD under the leadership of Sun Yat-sen (1866-1925 AD). His program was famous as three principles - nationalism, democracy, social progress. After his death, Chiang Kaishek carried forward his work. The Communist Party in China was founded in 1921 AD- After the Russian Revolution. At the time of Mao Zedong (1893-1976 AD), the Chinese Communist Party became a powerful political force, conquering the Kuomintang.

Establishment of New Democracy (1949-65 AD) - In 1949, the Government of the People's Republic of China Party was formed, which was based on the principles of new democracy. Under the new democracy, the economy was brought under the control of the government, land ownership was abolished, socialist programs were started, industrialization was increased and public institutions were created for students, farmers, women, etc.



Map 9.4 the Long March

During 1965-78 AD, there was a conflict between the Maoists and those who criticized their ideas. Red Guards (students and army) were involved in the campaign against old culture, ideas, customs and old habits. This Cultural Revolution had triggered a period of turmoil in China and weakened Mao (party). After the Cultural Revolution, the process of political stakes started. Now the Communist Party was led by Tang Xiaofing, who in 1978 announced the development of the four-point goal of modernization - science, agriculture, industry and defense. China's Communist Party and its supporters had struggled to end the traditions. He felt that people were suffering from poverty due to old traditions. This party strengthened China's economy with market reforms.

Table 9.1	
Major Events From The Eleventh To Fourteenth Centuries	
Year	Events
1066	The Norman People Defeated The Anglo Saxony People And Conquered England
1100	Construction Of Cathedrals In France
13-15-1317	Great Famine In Europe
1347-50	Bubonic Plague
1338-1461	Hundred Years' War Between England And France
1381	Peasant Revolt

Question

Multiple choice questions -

- The second class of French society was.
 - Pastor Class
 - Peasant Class
 - Elite
 - None of The Above
- The First Printing Press was invented by
 - By Martin Luther in 1455
 - by Gutenberg in 1455
 - Galileo in 1555 by
 - Newton in 1556.
- Movement was launched by Martin Luther King.
 - Per Reform Movement
 - Protestant Reform
 - Catholic Reform
 - Social Reform Movement
- Ptolemy's comparison name was
 - History
 - Das Capital
 - Geography
 - The Almazest
- were included in the Red Guards.
 - Samant
 - Farmer and Forced
 - Students and army people
 - of the villages

Fill in the blanks-

-was Ptolemy's famous book (Indica/Almazest)
-was the father of the Protestant Campaign.



(Martin Luther/Tomas More)

- 3.....were included in the edgetech people. (Elite/Pastor)
4. Naharonmad is known as From the period of 1788 AD to 1796 AD
(Religious frenzy)
5. The Australian Union was formed by combining 6 states in.....
(1901 AD /1905 AD).

Write the true/false-

1. Plato was known as Afaltoon in Arabic language. True/False
2. Rapid economic growth took place due to the development of canals and Railways. True/False
3. The document called confession was a way to extort money from people. True/False
4. The concept of gold rush was related to America. True/False
5. Banking institutions were started in Japan in 1872 AD. True/False

Match the pair correctly-

- | | |
|-----------------|--|
| 1. Pastor Class | A. Japan |
| 2. Sun-Yat-sen | B. First class of French society |
| 3. Arnold Tynby | C. Bahama Islands |
| 4. Mainji Ruler | D. Founder of the Republic in China |
| 5. Columbus | E. First use of the term industrial revolution |

Very short answer questions-

1. Where did the first Renaissance begin?
2. Whose work is Monalisa?
3. Which book did the Galileans write?
4. America was named after which geographer?
5. When was the People's Republic of China Party formed in China?

Short Answer Questions-

1. Describe the three sections of French society
2. Name the major anthropological topics?
3. What were the natives criticized for?
4. Explain Arabian science and philosophy.
5. How was the Republic established in China?

Long Answer Questions-

1. Explain the conflict of cultures in the world.
2. 'Menji regime paved the way for Japan's industrialization'. Explain.

Project-

1. Find out the reasons why Europeans had to search for new sea routes.
2. Discuss the cultural relations between India and Japan



Chapter-10

Temple Establishments in India

In this chapter- Ancient temples, Styles of temple construction, Nagar style, Dravidian style and Besar style.

You must have seen many ancient temples in and around of your, town. How ancient, huge and magnificent are these temples? How long will it take to build them? By whom would they have been built? It is natural for questions to come up to your mind. An important source of information about these temples is inscriptions, which are planted in these temples. In Sanskrit literature, the words devalaya, devayatan, devkul, etc. have been used for temples. The first mention of temples is found in 'Shatapatha Brahmana'. Temple architecture in India was developed in Guptakal. Generally, every temple has two types of orbital structures – the sanctum sanctorum and the pavilion. The idol of the main deity is installed in the sanctum sanctorum. There is a place for circumambulation around the sanctum sanctorum of the temple. The pavilion is called the entrance hall of the temple which is very large. Apart from this, there are also small and semi-mandalas, which are also used for kirtan, kirtan, etc. in addition to darshan. There is an umbrella-like structure above the sanctum sanctorum, which is called a peak or plane. There are many parts of the temples, which together give it a coordinated form. At that time it, was considered good to have a river, pond, pond, bawdi etc. near a holy place.



Figure- 10.1 Side View of Three Styles of Temple

Ancient Temple- By the 10th century, the role of the temple in land administration had attained a new heights. On the one side, the construction of stupas was going on, on the other side, statues of gods and goddesses related to Sanatan Dharma were also being built. Every temple or temple has an idol of a

chief or ruling deity. It is often seen that there are three types of houses of worship in temples -

1. Sandhar - which has a circumambulation path.
2. Nirandhar - which does not have a circumambulation path.
3. Sarvobhadra - which can be entered from all sides.

At that time there were some simple category temples, including verandahs, large chambers/ pavilions and houses of worship at the back, such as Deogarh in Uttar Pradesh, Eran in Madhya Pradesh and Udayagiri temples near Vidisha.

Styles of temple construction- Gupta temples can be mainly divided into five parts - Sandhara, Nirandhara, Sarvobhadra, rectangular temple and hollow cylindrical brick structured temple. After Guptas, three styles of temple construction developed. Nagara, Dravidian and Basar styles.

1. **Nagara Style-** Nagara style was spread from the Himalayas in northern India to the land of Vindhya Pradesh. Originally it is north Indian style, it is also called 'Aryan style'. The high peaks on the sanctum sanctorum are the main feature of this style. The shape of these peaks gradually decreases upwards. Above the summit is a large circle called 'Amalak', on which the upper part of the urn installed was pointed. Kautilya's arthashastra mentions the principles and rules related to temple construction. Many sub-styles of Nagara style were also developed, such as Pal, Odisha, Khajuraho, Solanki sub-style etc. The Nagara style was given considerable protection by the rulers in North India between the 8th and 13th centuries. The temples built in this style are called Lat in Kalinga, Gujarat in Odisha and 'Parvatiya' in the Himalayan region. Some nagara temples were also constructed in the Panchyatan style.
2. **Panchyatan style-** Among the temples built in this style, one main temple is in the middle and there are four subsidiary temples at its four corners. Laxman Temple (Khajuraho), Kandaria Mahadev Temple (Khajuraho), Sridev Vyameshwar Temple (Ratnagiri, Maharashtra) etc. are temples built in this style.

Know this also-

- The pinnacle of the temple is called Shikhar in North India and Vimana in South India.
- It was called Nagara style because of the construction of temples in northern India for the first time in the cities.

According to the scriptures, there are eight main parts of nagara style temples-

- | | | |
|---------------|---|--|
| Establishment | - | The base on which the temple is built. |
| Peak | - | The top part of the temple or the upper part of the Sanctum sanctorum. |
| Kalash | - | The top part of the peak, which is similar to the urn or Urn. |
| Amalak | - | the circular part below the urn at the top of the summit. |



Cervical	-	the upper slope of the summit.
Cupot	-	the part of a door, window, wall or pillar attached to the upper Ceiling.
Masoor	-	the part between the foundation and the walls.
Thighs	-	walls (especially of the sanctum sanctorum).

Major temples built in Nagara style-

1. **Sun Temple, Modhera (Gujarat)**- This temple was built by Bhimdev I in 1026 AD in Nagar style in Mehsana district of Gujarat. There is a water tank in the temple complex, which is known as Surya Kund. Since the temple is facing east, the sun's rays fall on the main temple every year at the time of the equinox (March 21 and September 23), when the day and night are equal.
2. **Khajuraho Temple Group (Madhya Pradesh)** - It was built in 954 AD by the Chandel ruler Dhangdev. This type of temple's is located in Khajuraho (Madhya Pradesh). These temple groups were built about 400 Years later from the Dashavatar temple of Deogarh. Temples located in this region were built by the Chandela rulers. The Lakshmana Temple located here is dedicated to Vishnu. Another famous temple in the type of Khajuraho is the 'Kandariya Mahadev Temple'. It is the culmination of the Indian temple architecture style. It was also built by Chandela King Dhangdev in 999 AD. It is the most developed (Saptartha style) temple among the temples of Khajuraho. Shivaling in the temple is 117 feet high, 117 feet long and 66 feet wide. The khajuraho temples are also very famous for their kamodwip and adorned statues.



Figure- 10.2 Temples of Khajuraho

3. **Sun Temple, Konark (Odisha)** – Built in Nagara style, a world famous temple was built by Narasimha Dev I of the Ganga dynasty, it is also called Black Pagoda. Its peak is of the Pidha Deul category. The entire temple is built in the form of a chariot of the Sun God drawn from seven horses, with

twelve pairs of chakras. The three temples for which Odisha is famous are – Sun Temple of Konark, Jagannath Temple of Puri and Lingaraj Temple of Bhubaneswar. These temples are called golden triangles.



Figure- 10.3 Sun Temple of Konark, Odisha

4. **Jagannath Temple, Puri (Odisha)** - This is a famous nagara style temple located in Puri. Four huge gates have been built in all four directions. In its sanctum sanctorum, Lord Jagannath is the incarnation of his sister Subhadra and brother Balabhadra. These vigrahas are converted after 8, 11 or 19 Years by the religious festival 'Navkalevar'. Navakalavar is made from the wood of a neem tree in which conch, chakra, mace and padma symbols are naturally made. The Jagannath Temple of Puri is also famous for the Rath Yatra that takes place every year.



Figure- 10.4 Jagannath Temple, Puri (Odisha)

5. **Lingaraj Temple, Bhubaneswar (Odisha)** - This famous temple is located in Bhubaneswar, the capital of Odisha. It was constructed in the 10th-11th century. This temple is dedicated to Harihara, a form of Lord Shiva. It is considered to be the best for, beauty and ornamentation in the temples of North India. It has 4 huge rooms - Deul, Jagmohan, Manmandap and Bhop Mandap. The peak of the temple is 160 m high. This temple is located in a huge rectangular courtyard of 520 feet × 465 feet. In the middle of the courtyard is a group of small temples, which are said to follow the Buddhist Chaitragrahas built in the quadrangular form of Buddhist stupas.
6. **Dashavatar Temple, Lalitpur (Uttar Pradesh)** - Dashavatar Temple is a



Figure- 10.5 Dashavatara Temple, Lalitpur (Uttar Pradesh)

unique example of Gupta art. This temple is built of red sandstone in Lalitpur district of Uttar Pradesh province. It was built in the early Years of about the sixth century. It was built almost 100 Years after the small temples of Sanchi and Udayagiri (MP). This temple is also built in the Panchyatan style of architecture. There are four steps with seven stairs around to reach its sanctum sanctorum. In this temple, the story of the ten incarnations of Lord



Figure- 10.6- Jain Temple of Delwara, Sirohi (Rajasthan)

Vishnu is displayed in the form of carvings, so it is called Dashavatar Temple. Apart from this, another feature of this temple is that this temple is west facing while most of the temples are facing east or north.

7. **Jain Temples of Delwara, Sirohi (Rajasthan)** - Located in sirohi district of Rajasthan, Jain temples of Delwara are the best examples of Nagara style. There is a group of five temples here, in which two temples Lun Vasahi and Vimal Vasahi are very famous. The Jain temple located here is dedicated to Jain Tirthankaras. They were built between the 11th and 13th centuries. These temples are made of marble. About 48 pillars of the temples have the figures of dances.
8. **Kamakhya Temple, Guwahati (Assam)** - There is evidence of the development of a regional style in Assam in the period of twelfth to fourteenth centuries. This style came into existence from a mixture of Tai style and the formerly popular Pal style influenced by Upper Varma and is known as Ahom style. The Kamakhya Temple (Shaktipeeth), located on the Nilanchal Hill near Guwahati, is a notable example of this style. The characteristic of this style is the polygonal dome spire. The Ambavachi Fair is organized every year in this temple. Tantrics and Aghoris from all over the country take part in it.
9. **Somnath Temple, Dwarka (Gujarat)** - Somnath Temple is located on the seashore in the Kathiawar region (Gujarat). This temple is one of the 12 Jyotirlingas of India. In religious texts, it is known as Prabhas Kshetra. The glory of Somnath Jyotirlinga is mentioned in detail in Mahabharata, Shrimad Bhagwat, and Skanda Purana etc. According to a legend, Chandrama (Som) meditated here considering Lord Shiva as his Nath (Swami), so it is called Somnath.

Know this also-

- The spire of the Somnath temple is 150 feet and the flag is 27 feet high.

The temple had already existed here even before the first century in BC. The second temple was rebuilt in the 7th century by the Maitrak kings of Vallabhi

Know this also-

- **Vimalvasahi Temple** - This temple was built in 1031 AD by Vimal Shah, the minister of Bhima, the ruler of Gujarat. This temple is dedicated to Lord Adinath, the first Jain Tirthankar. Adinath's eyes are made of real diamonds.
- **Loon Vasahi Temple** - This temple was built in 1231 AD by two brothers Vastupal and Tejpal (Vahela rulers) of Gujarat. This temple is dedicated to Lord Neminath, the 22nd Jain Tirthankara.

and the third time by the Gurjara Pratihara ruler Nagabhatta I in 815 AD. The Arab traveler Albaruni had mentioned the glory of this temple in his travelogue, due to which in 1024 AD Mahmud Ghaznavi attacked Somnath Temple with his 5000 companions and looted immense wealth from here and took it with him. After this, it was rebuilt by Bhima,



the ruler of Gujarat, and Bhoj, the ruler of Malwa. The present form of Somnath temple was built by Iron Man Sardar Vallabhbhai Patel. It was dedicated to the nation by the then President of India, Dr. Rajendra Prasad on December 1, 1955.

Dravidian style- Dravidian style has developed and expanded in South India. The structure of temples of this style is characterized by a pyramid-like top-facing spire on a square sanctum, a peak made of floors, whose top shadow is shaped like an eight-angle dome. Dravidian style temples are surrounded by a boundary wall unlike Nagara style. There are entrances in the middle of this boundary wall, which are called Gopuram. In this style, chariots and planes are built on top of huge temples. Dravidian style temples were built during the reign of cholas, pandyas, pallavas and rulers of Vijayanagara Empire. Most of the temples of this style are in Thanjavur, Madurai, Kanchi, Hampi, Vijayanagar etc. Its sub-styles are known as Pallav, Chola, Pandya, Vijayanagar and Nayak sub-styles. The Dravidian style is believed to have originated from the Pallava period.

Major temples built in Dravidian style-

1. **Meenakshi Temple of Madurai (Tamil Nadu)-** Meenakshi Temple is located in the famous city of Madurai in the province of Tamil Nadu. The main sanctum of this temple is believed to be more than 3500 Years old. There are 12 magnificent gopurams in the Meenakshi temple, on which fine paintings have been done. The architecture of this huge magnificent temple is also very interesting. The most important festival associated with this temple is 'Meenakshi Tirukalyanam', which is organized in the Chaitra month (mid-April). This temple is one of the richest temples in India. According to mythological texts, Lord Shiva came to Madurai city in the form of Sundareswara to marry Princess Meenakshi, daughter of Pandya king Malayadhwaj. This temple is dedicated to Meenakshi or the goddess with a fish-shaped eye. The fish was the royal symbol of the Pandya kings.
2. **Coastal Temple of Mahabalipuram (Tamil Nadu)-** The coastal temple of Mahabalipuram was built by Pallava King Narasimha Varman II (700-728 AD). This temple is located on the coast of the Bay of Bengal that is why it is called the Coast Temple. This temple is counted among the ancient temples of South India, which dates back to the 8th century. There are three temples here - in the middle is the temple of Lord Vishnu, and on either side there are Shiva



Figure- 10.7 Mudrai Meenakshi



**Figure- 10.8 Coastal Temple of Mahabalipuram
(Tamil Nadu)**

temples. The idol of Vishnu is located in the form of Anantashayanam in the Vishnu temple. The largest of the three temples located here is the East facing Siddheshwar Temple of Lord Shiva. The West facing temple is relatively small, also known as the Rajsinheshwara Temple. There is a 16-faced giant Shivalinga here. The entire temple is five storeys.

3. **Rajarajeshwara Temple of Thanjavur (Tamil Nadu)** – This temple is located in Thanjavur, Tamil Nadu. There is a huge Shivalinga in its sanctum sanctorum. Even after being more than 1000 Years old, it still remains in excellent condition. It was built “between” 1003-1010 AD by the Chola ruler Rajaraj I. For this reason, it was named after Rajarajeshwar Temple. The height of this temple with 13 floors is about 66 meters. About 1, 30,000 tonnes

Know this also-

- It is named Brihadeshwar because of the huge Shivalinga in the Rajarajeshwar temple.

Know this also-

- The temple was named Kachipetu Periya Thirukatrili (Stone Temple of Kanchi Petu) by Rajaraja Chola I, which is the original name of Kanchipuram. The Kailashnath Temple of Kanchi is in the list of protected monuments by the Archaeological Survey of India.

of granite stone was used in its construction. There is neither a mountain nor a rock around it for about 60 km. It is said that these stones were brought here with the help of 3 thousand elephants. No spices have been used in adding these stones. The stones have been

interconnected with puzzle technology.

4. **Kailashnath Temple of Kanchi (Tamil Nadu)** – The construction of this Shiva temple was started by Raj Singh in 658 AD and completed by King Mahendra Varman in 705 AD. Built of red sandstone, this temple has idols of a total of 58 gods and goddesses, including The Lion-borne Goddess Durga, Vishnu, around the original adorable Shiva. The back wall of the temple has an idol of Somskada (Lord Shiva and Uma with son Muruga at the centre). This temple has a large sixteen-sided Shivalinga, which is about 8 feet high.
5. **Virupaksha Temple of Pattadakal (Karnataka)** – This temple is one of the best examples of chalukya temples, which were built by Loka Mahadevi, the queen of Vikramaditya II, to commemorate Vikramaditya's victory over the

Pallava king of Kanchipuram. This temple is a nine-level and 50-meter high gopuram temple located at the foothills of hemkuta hill on the southern bank of the Tungabhadra River. There are many small temples inside this huge temple, which are older than the Virupaksha temple. This temple is also called 'Pampatti Temple'. Another important religious place located here is the Papnath Temple, which is dedicated to Lord Shiva.



Figure - 10.9 Virupaksha Temple of Pattadakal (Karnataka)

6. **Padmanabha Swamy Temple (Kerala)** - This temple is a world famous temple of Lord Vishnu located in Thiruvananthapuram, the capital of Kerala state of India. This historic temple, one of the major Vaishnava temples of India, is one of the many tourist places of Thiruvananthapuram. Padmanabha Swamy Temple is an important place of worship for Vishnu devotees. This temple was built in about the 10th century and it was rebuilt in 1750 AD by Martand Varma, the ruler of Travancore.

Know this also-

- The main idol in the Sri Padmanabha Swamy Temple is eighteen feet tall. The sanctum sanctorum of this temple is situated on a rock.

7. **Kailash Temple Ellora Maharashtra** - Kailash Temple is an excellent example of Dravidian style. It was built by the Rashtrakuta ruler Krishna I. This temple is built by cutting the entire temple by cutting a single rock. About 7000 laborers worked in the construction of this temple. This temple is located in cave number 16 of Ellora. In this temple, a replica of Mount Kailash has been built. This temple is built by cutting a mountain from top to bottom.

Know this also-

- Kailash Temple Ellora is considered an excellent example of Dravidian style.

Besar style- This style is a mixed form of Nagar and Dravidian style. Temples of this style are found from Vindhyaal Mountain to Krishna River. This style became popular in the second half of the 7th century and is mentioned in the texts as Besar. In the southern part of the Deccan i.e. Karnataka, the styles of Besar architecture are most commonly used.

Know this also-

- The Besar style was patronized during the Chalukya, Rashtrakuta and Hoysala dynasties.

The uniqueness of temples of this style is the base scheme of polygon or star shape. Aihole (Karnataka) is called the city of temples. At present, the remains of 70 temples are found here. They were built “between” 450-600 AD during the Chalukya reign. At that time the temples were being built by the Guptas in the north, due to which the characteristics of the Aryan shikhara style also reached the south. Therefore, a mixture of Nagar and Dravidian styles is found in the temples of Aihole.

Question

Multiple Choice Questions-

- Famous temples for Rath Yatra is.
 - Somnath Temple, Dwarka
 - Jagannath Temple, Puri
 - Delwara Jain Temple, Sirohi
 - Sun Temple, Konk
- The main feature of the temples of Khajuraho is.
 - V. Love Style
 - Chaul Style
 - Chalukya style
 - Kamodweep and makeup-oriented statues
- Among the following are the untrue statements regarding the Dashavatar? Temple of Gupta:
 - Vishnu's dashavataras are engraved on the walls of the temples.
 - The temple represents the early Nagara style.
 - It is a temple built in panchyatan style.
 - This temple is west facing.
- Kandariya Mahadev Temple is located in the city of
 - Ujjain
 - Khajuraho
 - Maihar
 - Dewas

Fill in the blanks -

- Information about the temples are received from.....
(Inscriptions/coins)
- is called the city of Temples.
(Mysore/Aihole)
- Besar style is also known as
(Chalukya style/Rajput style)
- Virupaksha Temple of Pattadakal is situated in..... (Karnataka/ Kerala)

Write the true/false -

- The origin of Dravidian style is believed to be from the Pallava period.
True/False
- Nagara style of temple construction is related to South India. True/False
- The mixed form of Nagar and Dravidian style is called Basar style.
True/False
- Aihole (Karnataka) is called the city of temples.
True/False

Match the pair correctly-

- | | |
|----------------------------|---------------|
| 1. Sun Temple of Modhera | A. Rajasthan |
| 2. Jain Temples of Delwara | B. Tamil Nadu |



3. Rajarajeshwara Temple
4. Padmanabha Swamy Temple

- C. Kerala
- D. Gujarat

Very short answer questions-

1. What is the other name of Besar style?
2. What do you mean by aircraft?
3. Where is the famous Konark Sun Temple located and who was its creator?
4. Which of the following are the planets in the sanctum sanctorum of the Jagannath Temple?
5. How many gopurams are there in Meenakshi Temple?

Short Answer Questions-

1. Write a comment on nagara style.
2. What do you know about the world famous Kamakhya Temple?
3. What do you understand by Panchyatan style? Write it down.
4. Tell us about Kailashnath Temple of Kanchi.
5. What do you know about the Dashavatar Temple? Write it down.

Long Answer Questions -

1. Describe the Somnath temple built in this style, referring to the characteristics of nagara style of temple construction.
2. Referring to the characteristics of the Dravidian style of temple construction, what do you know about the Meenakshi Temple built in this style?

Project-

1. List the famous temples in your area or state with location.



Chapter-11

Cultural Heritage of India

In this chapter- Cultural heritage, Yajna, Shodash Sanskar, Shruti-Smriti, Sanskrit language, Puranas, epics, philosophy texts, varna and ashram system, festivals and festivals, pilgrimage tradition and role of festivals/festivals and pilgrimage in national unity and integrity.

Since the beginning of human civilization, the basic concept of Indian culture has been all-welfare. This statement is confirmed in the Brihadaranyaka Upanishad - सर्वे भवन्तु सुखिनः सर्वे सन्तु निरामयाः सर्वे भद्राणि पश्यन्तु मा कश्चिद्दुःखं भाग्यवेत्। (1.4.14) That is, may all people be happy, may all people be free from disease, all should witness the shameful events and no creature in the world should become a victim of suffering. Therefore, Indian culture is considered as the best and great of the world. We can see the global nature of Indian culture in the buildings, temples, stupas, records and texts available in many countries of the world. In India, religion, language, literature, art, science, philosophy, Yajna etc. were in advanced stages. Indian sages, Buddhist monks, merchants and kings have made special contributions to the global propagation of Indian culture. That is why Radha Kumud Mukherjee in her book 'The Fundamental Unity of India' has used the term 'Greater India' in view of this cultural expansion. This means that at that time Java, Malaya, Sumatra, Burma, Lanka, Bornea, Cambodia, Champa, Bali, etc. were Indian colonies. Even today, the symbols of Indian culture are clearly seen in these countries. At that time, these countries were not developed but were rich in terms of natural wealth. That is why Indian traders, kings, religious preachers had enriched these countries intellectually, physically and culturally by making them their colonies for trade and propagation of religion.



Fig. 11.1 Yajna

Cultural Heritage- The process of transferring culture from one generation to another is called cultural heritage. Art, music, literature, architecture, crafts, religion, philosophy, sacrifice, science, customs, traditions, festivals and festivals, ways of living are all part of our cultural heritage. We will study them in detail as follows:

Yajya- Yajna is a valuable heritage of our Indian culture. A havan performed for a particular purpose with chanting of mantras is called Yajna. Through Yajna, various food items and valuable aromatic nutritious liquids are offered to the

deities for the welfare of the world through fire and air. In our texts, no object has been given the same religious and scientific importance as sacrifices. Vedic literature contains evidence of sacrifices ranging from a few minutes of sacrifices that lasted for many Years. In many places in Ramayana, Lord Shri Ram has been said to be the performer of Yajna and in Mahabharata it is told that Shri Krishna can leave everything, but cannot leave havan. In Sanatan Dharma, yajna or havan is organized on many occasions such as birth of a child, mundan, naming, birthday, starting a business, marriage etc. The smoke emanating from the Yajna destroys germs spread in the house and environment. This brings purity to the environment and the house and removes B.E. pimples too. This holy smoke also purifies the eyes, nose, and lungs.

Culture is the basis sanatana- Culture makes human beings civilized, without culture, man is considered to be animal worthy. Culture begins before a person is born and lasts until his death. Sixteen rites have also been mainly explained in our scriptures, which are as follows- Conception, Punsavan, Simantannayana, Jatakarma, Namkaran, Nircharan, Annaprashan, Chudakarma (Mundan), Vidyarambha, Karnavedh, Yajnopavita, Vedarambha, Keshanta. , conversion, marriage, and other rituals.

Shruti-Smriti- Shruti and Smriti are sacred texts of Sanatan Dharma. The Vedas are called Shruti because the Vedas were first recited by God to the sages. The Vedas have been given to the disciples by the Guru according to the Shravan tradition. The Vedas have four parts - Samhita-Mantra part, Brahmana Granth-Prose part (commentary of Karmakanda), Aranyak (discussion of esoteric elements) and Upanishad (discussion of the relationship between Brahma and Atma). Rig Veda, Yajurveda, Samaveda and Atharvaveda are Shruti literature, which is an unchanging, eternal and theoretical knowledge base. In the memoirs, the rules of human conduct and behavior have been explained. Dharmashastra and Dharmasutra, Agam Shastra, Manusmriti etc. Apart from these, Puranas, Shrimad Bhagwad Gita, Ramayana, Mahabharata, Darshan etc. are included.

Sanskrit language- Culturally, Sanskrit literature has a proud place in the world. It is the oldest and best language not only in India but also all over the world. Sanskrit language is called Devvani. Sanskrit language is completely scientific and practical. It is considered to be the mother of other languages of the world. In ancient India, gurus used to teach their disciples through Sanskrit language in gurukuls. Today, due to the scientism inherent in it, scientists have considered it as a suitable and best language for computers. Our ancient literature has been composed in Sanskrit language. The literature of Sanskrit is so vast that all Latin and Greek literature together cannot match it. Sanskrit literature has huge repositories of mathematics,

Know this also-

- Sanskrit language has been included in the 8th schedule of the Indian constitution.



philosophy, grammar, music, politics, medicine, architecture, metallurgy, drama, poetry, story, etc.

Puranas- Puranas have been called the soul of Indian culture. The Puranas have given a systematic form of life, lifestyle, life-behavior, public behavior. Along with the history of ancient times in the Puranas, religion, policy, pilgrimage, dynasty, creation, etc. are also described. The number of Puranas is 18. There is an interesting story described in Vishnu Purana

Table 10.1	
List Of Five Epics	
Raghuvansham	Kalidas
Kumarasambhavam	Kalidas
Kiratarjuniyam	Bharavi
Shishupalavadham	Magh
Naishadhacharitam	Sri Harsha

regarding Pranayana or his founders in the Puranas, according to which Ved Vyas had composed the Purana-Samhita along with the narrative, anecdote, saga and kal pashudhi etc. The Puranas were taught by a disciple named Lomharshan, a well-known sutajati. Lomaharshan gave great knowledge of the Puranas to his three deserving disciples of Kashyapavansh - Akritavaran, Savarni and Shanshapayana and these three prepared three Purana-Samhitas on the basis of the original samhita. Later, his disciple-tradition composed the Ashtasha Mahapuranas and many sub-puranas. Brahma Purana, Padma Purana, Vishnu Purana, Shiva Purana, Bhagavata Purana, Narada Purana, Markandeya Purana, Agni Purana, Bhavishya Purana, Brahmavaivarta Purana, Linga Purana, Varaha Purana, Skanda Purana, Vamana Purana There are eighteen Puranas, Kurma Purana, Matsya Purana, Garuda Purana and Brahmanda Purana.

Mahakavya- According to Acharya Vishwanath, the one in which the sargas are essayed is called Mahakavya. The plot of the epic should be historical or history-dependent. Its protagonist resembles a deity or a Kshatriya, whose character is coordinated by the dhirodatta qualities. In Mahakavya, one of the adornment, heroic, calm and compassionate juices is the main juice. Ramayana and Mahabharata are the main among the ancient epics. In ancient Sanskrit literature, the five epics - Ramayana (Valmiki), Mahabharata (Ved Vyasa), Buddhacharita (Ashwaghosh), Kumarasam Bhavam (Kalidas), Raghuvansh (Kalidas), Kiratarjuniyam (Bharvi), Shishupala Vadh (Magha), and Naishadhiya Charitam (Shriharsha) have an important place. Apart from these, Buddhacharita (Ashvaghosa) and Bhattikavya (Bhatti) also fall under the category of epics.

Know this also-

- The first epic in Hindi language is Prithiviraj Raso written by Chandrabardai.
- Padmavat- Malik Muhammad Jayasi, Ramcharit Manas-Tulsidas, Ramchandrika-Acharya Keshavdas, Saket-Maithili Sharan Gupta, Kamayani-Jaishankar Prasad, and Urvashi-Ramdhari Singh Dinkar etc. are the major epics.

Philosophy- In Vedic philosophical concepts, the properties of shat philosophy emerged. These philosophies accept the authenticity of the Vedas, hence they are



called theistic philosophies. There are Sankhya, Yoga, Nyaya, Veshika, Purva Mimamsa, Vedanta and Theistic Philosophy. Apart from these, Charvaka, Jain, Buddhist philosophy are atheist philosophies.

Varna System- the Varna system has an important place in the Indian cultural heritage. In the Purushasukta of rigveda, the four

varnas of samaj are described as the four parts of the great man. On the basis of the work of these four organs, the Varna system was created, which later became birth-based. Under the Varna system, society is classified into four varnas.

Brahmins- Brahmins used to study the Vedas, teach, perform religious duties and rituals etc. Brahmin priests, rajpurohits, ministers, teachers, preachers and acharyas fall in this category.

Kshatriya- Kshatriya was the second character of the ancient social system. This character was the pivot of the entire system of governance. Protecting the public money of the people was the main responsibility of this character.

Vaishya- The third character in the social system was Vaishya. Their main work was trade, agriculture and animal husbandry. People belonged to this category remained wealthy.

Shudra- The main function of this character was to serve. The Shudra Varna had an important place in the social system. The importance of this character is evident from the fact that even today, Yajna, rituals, marriages, chariot construction, temple construction, etc. are not completed without their presence. Shudras were also invited to Yudhishtira's Rajasuya Yajna mentioned in the Mahabharata. Such as- आमन्त्रयध्वं राष्ट्रेषु ब्राह्मणान् भूमिपानथ । विशश्च मान्यान् शूद्रांश्च सर्वाननयतेति च ॥

(33.41) In this verse, By the command of Yudhishtira, Sahadeva tells the messengers that you should go to all the kingdoms and invite the kings brahmins, Vaishyas and all the Shudras there.

Ashram System- In Vedic literature, there is a mention of ashram system with the best laws. The ashram system is considered to be the best way of life in the world. In this method, all human beings have worldly and supernatural progress. Ancient mystics considered the entire

Table 10.2	
List Of Conspiracy Theorists	
Philosophy	Pioneer
Sankhya	Maharishi Kapil
Yoga	Maharishi Patanjali
Justice	Akshpad Gautam
Special	Uluk Kanad
Purwa Mimamsa	Maharishi Jaimini
Uttar Mimamsa (Vedanta)	Maharishi Badrayan



Figure 11.2- Ancient Gurukul

human life span to be 100 Years and divided it into four equal parts, this division is called ashram system.

Brahmacharya Ashram- From the birth to the age of 25, the period is called Brahmacharya Ashram. In this ashram, a boy used to study all types of knowledge at a free of cost as a brahmachari by staying in gurukul or ashram. On the completion of education, the boy would return to his home by giving Guru-Dakshina to the Guru.

Table 11.3	
Major Festivals of India festival	
Festival/	Date/Date of Celebration date
Basantiya Navratri	from Chaitra Shukla Pratipada to Navami Tithi
Ram Navami	Chaitra Shukla Navami
Hanuman Jayanti	Chetra Purnima/Kartik Krishna Chaturdashi
Jagannath Rath Yatra	Ashadh Shukla Dwitiya
Shravani/ Raksha Bandhan	Shravan Purnima
Krishna Janmashtami	Bhadrapada Krishna Ashtami
Ganesh Chaturthi	Bhadrapada Shukla Chaturthi
Tejadashi	Bhadrapada Shukla Dashami
Sharadiya Navratri	From Ashwin Shukla Pratipada to Navami
Dussehra	Ashwin Shukla Dashami
Deepavali	Deepavali Kartik Amavasya
Govardhan Puja Gudipadwa	Kartik Shukla Pratipada
Makar Sankranti/Pongal/Lohri/Bihu	January 14/15
Onam	In the month of Chingam of Onam Malayalam calendar
Basant Panchami	Magh Shukla Panchami
Holi	Phalgun Purnima
Guru Nanak Jayanti/ Prakash Parv	Kartik Purnima
Eid	Last Date of Ramadan
Christmas	December 25
Parsi Navroz	at the beginning of Parsi New Year

Grihastha Ashram- The time of grihastha ashram was from 26 to 50 Years of age. The main tasks of this ashram were to get married for worldly and supernatural happiness, to do charity according to power and to perform all the duties of god worship and home according to the law in due time.

Vanaprastha Ashram- The period of Vanaprastha Ashram was 51 to 75 Years of age. After the home stay, this ashram used to work as a preparation for going to sanyas ashram. As its name suggests, to enter and stay in this ashram, one has to go to the forest away from home and family.

Sanyas Ashram- Sanyas Ashram was the last ashram of human life. Its time frame was set from 76 to 100 Years. During this period, man used to give up all

worldly attachments and leave his home and go to a place in a quiet environment and meditate on God.

Festivals - Festivals have an important place in our sanatan Vedic culture. Festivals give us opportunities to unite and live together as a family, society. Festivals also increase mutual harmony and brotherhood. There are so many festivals, in our society that we often celebrate some festivals as, Independence Day, Republic Day, Gandhi Jayanti etc. are our national festivals.



Figure 11.3- Shrivani Upakarma

Tirtha Parampara- Places of religious and spiritual importance are called pilgrimages. The main goal of human life is to achieve purushartha chatushta. Out of these purushartha chatushtyas, there are different opinions of the mystics for attaining the ultimate salvation. In

which there is a pilgrimage tradition or pilgrimage. Places of religious and spiritual importance are called pilgrimages. By doing the pilgrimage, a person gets self-satisfaction as well as knowledge of different languages, dialects, food, dress, living, customs, climate, satsang of the best men and saints etc. of different regions of the country. There are numerous holy, delightful and historical pilgrimage sites in India. Which we will study in detail in the next chapter.

Know this also-

- There are four purusharthas- Dharma, Artha, Kama and Moksha.

Role of festivals and pilgrimage in national unity and integrity- The importance of festivals, fasts, pilgrimages, has been in Indian civilization and culture since ancient times. In India, some festivals are celebrated almost every day. By celebrating these festivals, new energy is transmitted, we get an opportunity to come on one platform, which strengthens national harmony and brotherhood. Each festival is also related in historical perspective. All these festivals and fasts are related to ancient culture in some form or the other. Most of the festivals in India are celebrated by all religions, castes and sects. Festivals like Deepawali, Holi, Makar Sankranti, Somvati Amavasya, etc. are celebrated all over India.

Pilgrimage sites and pilgrimages have always been important in the Indian cultural tradition. These pilgrimage sites are located almost in all parts of India. Even when transport facilities were not developed in India, people used to travel on foot to remote places, which was a symbol of India's geographical unity. At present, most people like pilgrimage. The view of miniature India is revealed in the pilgrimage site where people going on pilgrimage to different regions of India together. For example, in the Kumbh Mela, such picturesque scenes are seen,

which are helpful in building our national unity and integrity. These pilgrimage sites have been the backbone of the Indian economy since ancient times. At present, they have a huge contribution in the economic field. In ancient times, temples, pilgrimage sites have been center of help to the public in times of famine, epidemic, etc. Even at present, various temples and pilgrimage sites do many public welfare works during natural disasters. For example, during the Corona period, the famous Shirdi Sai Baba temple of Maharashtra donated Rs 51 crore, Mahavir Hanuman Temple, Patna Donated Rs 1 crore, Swaminarayan Temple Group donated Rs 1.88 crore to the Chief Minister's Relief Fund of their respective states. Many such examples are replete with every state of India.

Know this also-

- According to the National Sample Survey Organization (NSSO), pilgrimage contributes 2.32% to India's GDP. The economy of temples in India is three lakh crore rupees.

Question

Multiple Choice Questions-

1. Sarve Bhavantu Sukhin: Sarve Santu Niramaya: Shloka is taken from the book.
A. Brihadaranyak B. Manusmriti C. Ramayana D. Mahabharata
2. Number of Puranas from the following is.
A. 21 B. 19 C. 4 D. 18
3. Theistic philosophy of the following is.
A. Sankhya B. Yoga
C. Justice D. All of the above
4. The oldest epic is.
A. Mahabharata B. Ramayana
C. Panchatantra D. All of the above

Fill in the blanks-

1. Shruti, Yajna, Sanskar are included in.....
(Natural Heritage/cultural heritage)
2. The Puranas is called Prana in..... (Indian Culture/Western Culture)
3. Deepawali is celebrated on.....the month of Kartik.
(Amavasya/Purnima)

Write the True/false-

1. Puranas are called the lifeblood of Indian culture. True/False
2. India is surrounded by the sea from all sides. True/False
3. There is a division of life span in the ashram system. True/False
4. Gandhi Jayanti is celebrated every year on October 2. True/False

Match the following

1. Brahmacharya Ashram A. 26 to 50 Years



2. Grihastha Ashram
3. Vanaprastha Ashram
4. Sanyas Ashram

- B. 76 to 100 Years
- C. 25 Years from birth
- D. 51 to 75 Years

Very short answer questions-

1. Who is called Devvani?
2. By whom is the epic Shishupalavadh composed?
3. What do you mean by Shruti?
4. Write the definition of epic according to Acharya Vishwanath.

Short Answer Questions

1. Mention sixteen cultures.
2. Mention the 'Ashram System' of Indian tradition.
3. What do you know about Conspiracy?
4. Write a note on the character arrangement.

Long Answer Questions

1. Explain in detail about cultural heritage.
2. Explain the contribution of festivals and pilgrimage traditions in national unity And integrity.

Project-

1. List the festivals, festivals celebrated in different regions of India and briefly describe any two of them.



Chapter-12

Major pilgrimage sites in India

In this chapter- importance of Chardham, Dwadash Jyotirlinga, Shaktipeeth, Sapta Mokshapuri, Kumbh Mela, pilgrimage places.

Pilgrimages hold special significance in our Sanatan tradition. They are the centres of specific energy of religious and spiritual importance, hence they are called holy places. There is a sense of purity among the travelers coming to these places. It has been said- तारयितुम समर्थः इति तीर्थः that is, whoever is able to cross the ocean of the world is the same pilgrimage. There is a mention of Char Dham as the centre of the creator of Vishnu tattva i.e. sattva guna, dwadash jyotirlinga as the centre of the creator of Shiva tattva and sapt mokshapuris with 52 shaktipeeths as the originator of Shakti tattva.

Chardham- Adi Shankaracharya established four holy pilgrimage sites in all four directions of India, which are known as Char Dham. These four dhams are Badrinath in the north, Dwarka in the west, Jagannath Puri in the east and Rameshwaram in the south. Chardham Yatra has a special place in Hinduism. It would be more logical to call it a philosophy of life, not a journey.

1. **Badrinath-** This holy dham is situated on the banks of the Alaknanda River at an altitude of 3133 m in the lap of Male and Narayan Mountains in 'Badrivan' in Chamoli district of Uttarakhand state. Here is the vigraha in the



Figure 12.1- Badrinath Dham

padmasana state, the meditation of Lord Vishnu's black stone. The priests here are Nambooripada Brahmins of South India. This holy place is today known as Badri Vishal.

Know this also-

- Badrinath has been called Baikunth Dham.

Kedarnath is located at a distance of 245 km from Badrinath. At present, the government has contributed significantly to the development of these two pilgrimage sites, which has led to the development of employment opportunities in this area.

2. **Dwarka-** Dwarka Dham is located on the banks of the Arabian Sea in the state of Gujarat in the west direction of India. It is considered as the gateway to salvation. Lord Shri Krishna, after coming from Mathura, established the city of Dwarka as his workplace. Dwarka is divided into three parts – Mool Dwarka, Gomti Dwarka and Bet Dwarka. The Dwarkadhish Temple is located at the place where lord Krishna's private palace is located. The temple was built by Vajrabhan, the great-grandson of Lord Krishna. The temple was found in its present form in the 16th century. The temple has a golden quadrangular statue of Lord Krishna, which is called 'Ranchodji'. Bhet Dwarka is located at a distance of 34 km from Dwarka. At this place, Shri Krishna met his best friend Sudama. For this reason, this place was named 'Bhet Dwarka'.



Figure 12.2 Dwarka Dham

3. **Jagannathpuri-** The famous temple of Lord Jagannath is located in Puri, the coastal town of Odisha state. This temple is also dedicated to Shri Krishna Bhagwan. The construction of this temple was started by Kalinga ruler Anantavarman Chodgang Dev in the 12th century and was given by the present form King Bhimdev. The height of the temple is 214 feet. Lord Jagannath, Balabhadra and Subhadra are the main deities of this temple. The most famous



Figure-12.3 Jagannath Dham

of the festival is the Rath Yatra, which is held on the second day of Ashadha Shukla Paksha. In this festival, the three idols are decorated in very magnificent and huge chariots and taken out on the yatra, in which millions of devotees participate. One of the major attractions of Jagannath Temple is the kitchen here. This kitchen is known as the largest kitchen in India. Here 500 cooks and 300 assistant colleagues work together to make Mahaprasad in the kitchen. All the food is cooked in clay pots.

Know this also-

- There are idols made of wood in the Jagannath temple.
- The flag on the top of the Jagannath temple always waves against the wind.
- No bird or plane was ever seen flying over this temple. The shadow of the peak is never visible on the ground.

4. **Rameshwaram-** Rameshwaram Dham is located in the Ramanathapuram district of Tamil Nadu province in the south of India. Rameshwaram is also known as the Kashi of the South. According to mythology, Lord Rama established Jyotirlinga in Rameshwaram to conquer Ravana. The corridor of Rameshwaram Temple is considered to be the largest corridor in the world. There are 24 wells in the temple, which are called Tirtha. This temple is 1000 feet long, 650 feet wide and 150 feet high. This temple is also known as Ramnath Swami Temple. Picture- Shri Rameshwaram Dham

Dwadash Jyotirlinga- According to the Dwadash Jyotirlinga Puranas, wherever Shiva himself appeared in the form of light, those places are known as Jyotirlingas. Jyotirlingas have been established as energy sites for the welfare and movement of creation. By worshiping and worshipping these Jyotirlingas, all the sins of the birth and birth of the devotees are eliminated. There are twelve

Jyotirlingas in the whole of India, which have spiritual and mythological significance. By remembering the names of these Jyotirlingas, a person attains salvation- सौराष्ट्रे सोमनाथं च श्रीशैले मल्लिकार्जुनम् । उज्जयिन्यां महाकालमोकार ममलेश्वरम्॥ परल्यां वैजनाथं च डाकिन्यां भीमशङ्करम्। सेतुबन्धे तु रामेशं नागेशं दारुकावने। वाराणस्यां तु विश्वेशं त्र्यम्बकं गौतमीतटे। हिमालये तु केदारं घृष्णेशं च शिवालये।। एतानि ज्योतिर्लिङ्गानि साँयं प्रातः पठेन्नरः। सप्तजन्मकृतं पापं स्मरेणन विनश्यति॥

1. **Somnath Jyotirlinga**- This famous Jyotirlinga is located in the province of Gujarat. We have studied this geopolitical in detail in the previous chapter.
2. **Mallikarjuna Jyotirlinga** is located on Mount Srisailem in Krishna district of Andhra Pradesh state. For this reason, it is also called Srisailem Mallikarjuna. Srisailem is also called the Kailash of the South. Its religious and mythological importance has been described in many scriptures. According to legends, by worshiping Shiva on the mountain on which this Jyotirlinga is located, a person gets a virtuous fruit like Ashvamedha Yajna.
3. **Mahakaleshwar Jyotirlinga** is situated on the banks of river Kshipra in Ujjain city of Madhya Pradesh. This Jyotirlinga is described in Mahabharata, Shiva Purana, and Skanda Purana. Ujjain has also been called Ujjayini and Avantikapuri in ancient times. It is an age old tradition that the, Lord Mahakal rides every Monday of Shravan month. Located on the top of the Mahakaleshwar Temple, shri Nagchandreshwar Temple is visited once a year on the day of Nag Panchami.



Figure 12.4- Shri Mahakaleshwar Jyotirlinga, Ujjain, Madhya Pradesh

4. **Shri Omkareshwar Jyotirlinga**- Omkareshwar Jyotirlinga is located on an island called Mandhata or Shivpuri in the middle of Narmada River in

Khandwa district of Madhya Pradesh. Narmada River flows around this island in such a way that its shape resembles Om. That is why this Jyotirlinga is called Omkareshwar Jyotirlinga. There are two forms of Omkareshwar Jyotirlinga – Omkareshwar and Mamleshwar. Mamleshwar Jyotirlinga is located at a short distance from Omkareshwar Jyotirlinga on the southern bank of Narmada, but both jyotirlingas are counted in one.

Know this also-

- Shiva is called Mahakaal because of the repetition of time being beyond calculation.
- In Indian calculus, Ujjain is considered the center of the earth.
- Any type of Kaal Sarpadosh ends by having a darshan of Nagchandreshwar.
- The Mahakal Corridor was inaugurated on October 11, 2022 by the Honorable Prime Minister Shri Narendra Modi.

5. **Shri Kedarnath Jyotirlinga-** Pleased with the penance of Nara and Narayan, Lord Shiva accepted to live here in the form of Jyotirlinga. Shri Kedarnath Jyotirlinga is located on the kedar peak of the Himalayas, the king of mountains, in rudraprayag district of Uttarakhand. Badrinath and Kedarnath are the two major pilgrimages of Uttarakhand. Kedarnath was the most affected area due to the terrible floods and landslides in June 2013 AD. The area around the temple was destroyed by the cloudburst, but the main part of the temple and the ancient peaks remained safe and sound.



Figure-12.5 Kedarnath Jyotirlinga

6. **Shri Bhimshankar Jyotirlinga-** Bhimashankar Jyotirlinga is located on the Sahyadri Mountain in Pune district of Maharashtra state. According to Shiva Purana, in ancient times a demon named Bhima who was the son of Ravana's brother Kumbhakarna. He received the boon of conquering the world with the penance of Brahmaji and took control of the entire devloka and also imprisoned King Sudakshina, a devotee of Shiva. Sudakshina also prayed to Shiva for the destruction of Bhima. Shiva had burnt that Bhima demon and consumed him. On the prayer of sages and devgans, Shiva started living here forever in the form of Jyotirlinga.
7. **Shri Vishwanath Jyotirlinga-** Shri Vishwanath Jyotirlinga is also known as 'Shrikashi Vishwanath'. It is located in kashi (Varanasi) city of Uttar Pradesh. Kashi holds the highest importance among all religious places. Lord Vishnu meditated on Shiva here with the desire of creation. The present form of the temple was built in 1780 AD by Rani Ahilya Bai Holkar. In 1853 AD, Maharaja Ranjit Singh of Punjab made the peaks of the temple golden with 1000 kg of gold. Kashi is considered to be the capital of Lord Shiva, so it is also very glorious. It is also referred to as Anandvan, Anand Kanan, and Avimukt Kshetra etc. At present, the Kashi Vishwanath corridor has been constructed by the Government of India by beautifying this temple.

Know this also-

 - The Kashi-Vishwanath corridor was inaugurated on December 13, 2021 by Prime Minister Shri Narendra Modi.
8. **Sri Trimbakeshwar Jyotirlinga-** Shri Trimbakeshwar Jyotirlinga is located near Brahmagiri Mountain in Nashik district of Maharashtra state. Godavari River originates near this Jyotirlinga. On the request of Gautam Rishi and Godavari River, Lord Shiva accepted to live here as Jyotirlinga. Godavari River is known as South Ganga and Gautami Ganga. Trimbakeshwar Temple is surrounded by three hills namely Brahmagiri, Nilgiri and Kalagiri. The specialty of this temple is that it has three water sources Bilthi Tirtha, Vishwanath Tirtha and Mukunda Tirtha.
9. **Shri Vaidyanath Jyotirlinga-** Shri Vaidyanath Dham is located in Deoghar district of Jharkhand state. Deoghar means 'house of gods'. Due to the fulfillment of the wishes of the people coming here, this Shivalinga is also called 'Kamna Ling'. In the month of Shravan, Shiva devotees take gangajal from Sultanganj in Bihar and walk 105 kms to offer it to Lord Shiva. The devotees of Lord Shiva who bring



Figure-12.6 Shri Vaidvanath Dham

gangajal on foot are called 'Kanwariyas'. The Dak Kavad Yatra is very famous here.

10. **Shri Nageshwar Jyotirlinga-** Shri Nageshwar Jyotirlinga is located at a place called Daruk at a distance of 20 km from Dwarka in the state of Gujarat. This Jyotirlinga is worshiped as the God of serpents. According to a legend, Supriya (Vaishya), an ardent devotee of Lord Shiva, killed a demon named Daruk from the weapon given by him as per Shiva's orders.

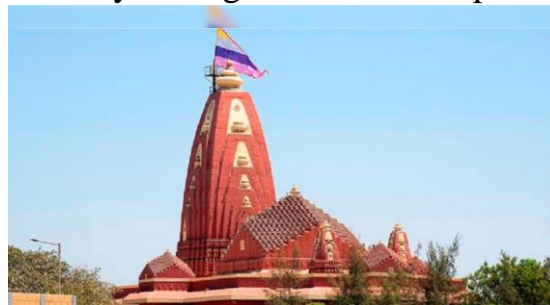


Figure- 12.7 Nageshwar Jyotirlinga

11. **Sri Rameshwaram Jyotirlinga** - Sri Rameshwaram Jyotirlinga jyotirlinga is also counted among the four dhams. We have studied this jyotirlinga under the heading 'Char Dham' of this chapter. Picture: Rameshwaram Jyotirlinga.
12. **Shri Ghrishneshwar Jyotirlinga-** Shri Ghrishneshwar Jyotirlinga is located in Aurangabad district of Maharashtra province. The temple was built by Rani Ahilyabai Holkar. According to Shiva Purana, Lord Shiva himself appeared here and revived the dead son of his unique devotee Ghushma. Hence, this temple is named ghrishneshwar Mahadev after Ghushma. In Ghrishneshwar, there is also the samadhi of Shri Janardan Maharaj Ji, the guru of Eknath Ji. There are famous Ellora caves near this temple.



Map- 12.1 Jyotirlingas of India

Shaktipeeth- According to Hindu belief, the place where the organs or ornaments of Goddess Sati's body fell, that place is called Shaktipeeth. The highest Shaktipeeth is in West Bengal. The number of Shaktipeeths has been described differently in different texts – 108 in Devi Bhagwat Purana, 26 in Kalika Purana, 51 in Shivacharitra and 52 in Tantra Chudamani. At present 52 Shaktipeeths are more famous, which are located in different regions of India as well as in Pakistan, Bangladesh, Nepal and Tibet. लङ्कायां शाङ्करीदेवी कामाक्षी काञ्चिकापुरे। प्रद्युम्ने शृङ्खलादेवी चामुण्डी क्रौञ्चपट्टणे ॥१॥ अलम्पुरे जोगुलाम्बा श्रीशैले भ्रमराम्बिका। कोल्हापुरे महालक्ष्मी मुहुर्ये एकवीरा ॥२॥

Know this also-

- Sati was the daughter of King Daksha and wife of Lord Shankar. Shankar/Shiva

उज्जयिन्यां महाकाली पीठिकायां पुरुहूतिका। ओढ्यायां गिरिजादेवी माणिक्या दक्षवाटिके॥३॥ हरिक्षेत्रे कामरूपी प्रयागे माधवेश्वरी। ज्वालायां वैष्णवीदेवी गया माङ्गल्यगौरिका॥४॥ वारणास्यां विशालाक्षी काश्मीरेतु सरस्वती। अष्टादश सुपीठानि योगिनामपि दुर्लभम् ॥५॥ सायङ्काले पठेन्नित्यं सर्वशत्रुविनाशनम्। सर्वरोगहरं दिव्यं सर्वसम्पत्करं शुभम्॥६॥

Table 12.1
Major Bawan Shaktipeeth

Sl.	Power Place	Place	Organ Or Ornament That Fell
1	Hinglaj	125 Km From Karachi (Pakistan) Distant.	Brahmarandha (Head)
2	Sugar	Karachi (Pakistan)	Eye
3	Sunanda	Shikarpur (Bangladesh)	Nostrils
4	Mahamaya	Pahalgaon (Kashmir)	Throat
5	Jwalaji	Kangra (Himachal Pradesh)	Tongue
6	Tripuramalini	Jalandhar (Punjab)	Left Breast
7	Jaydurga	Deoghar (Jharkhand)	Heart
8	Mahamaya	Gujarashwari Temple (Nepal)	Both Knees
9	Dakshayani	Kailash Mansarovar (Tibet)	Right Hand
10	Vimla	Viraj (Odisha)	Navel
11	Gandaki	Mukti Nath Temple (Nepal)	Head Or Neck
12	Bahula	Bahul (West Bengal)	Left Hand
13	Mangalchandrika	Ujjaini (Madhya Pradesh)	Right Wrist
14	Tripura Sundari	Radhakishorpurgaon (Tripura)	Right Leg
15	Bhavani	Chandranath Mountain (Bangladesh)	Right Arm
16	Bhramari	Jalpaiguri (West Bengal)	Left Leg
17	Kamakhya	Guwahati (Assam)	Genital part
18	Lalita	Prayag (Uttar Pradesh)	Finger
19	Jubilee	Khasi Hills (Bangladesh)	Left Thigh
20	Witchcraft	Yugadya (West Bengal)	Right Toe
21	Kalika	Kalighat (Kolkata)	Left Toe
22	Vimla	Murshidabad (West Bengal)	Crown
23	Giant	Varanasi (Uttar Pradesh)	Beaded Earring
24	Bhadrakali	Kanyashram, Kanyakumari (Tamil Nadu)	Anterior Section
25	Savitri	Kurukshetra (Haryana)	Heel
26	Gayatri	Pushkar, Ajmer (Rajasthan)	Manibandh
27	Mahalakshmi	Srishail (Bangladesh)	Throat (Cervix)
28	Devgarbha	Kanchi (West Bengal)	Bone
29	Harsiddhi	Ujjain (Madhya Pradesh)	Elbow
30	Uma	Vrindavan (Uttar Pradesh)	Bunch And Bangles
31	Shivani	Chitrakoot (Uttar Pradesh)	Right Chest
32	Narayani	Shuchitheertham Shiva Temple (Tamil Nadu)	Dentary (Vertical)
33	Varahi	Panchsagar (Location Unknown)	Lower Teeth
34	Aparna	Bhawanipurgaon (Bangladesh)	Anklet
35	Srisundari	Ladakh	Anklet On Right Foot
36	Kapalini	East Medinipur (West Bengal)	Left Heel



37	Chandrabhaga	Junagadh (Gujarat)	Abdomen
38	Avanti	Ujjain (Madhya Pradesh)	Lips
39	Bhramari	Nashik (Maharashtra)	Chin
40	Visveshwari	Rajahmundry (Andhra Pradesh)	Cheek
41	Miss	Hooghly (Bengal)	Right Shoulder
42	Uma Mahadevi	Mithila (Nepal)	Left Shoulder
43	Kalika	Birbhum, (West Bengal)	Leg Bone
44	Jaydurga	Karnat (Location Unknown)	Both Ears
45	Mahishmardini	Birbhum, (West Bengal)	Brow (Mind)
46	Yashoreshwari	Khulna (Bangladesh)	Hands And Feet
47	Fullra	Atthas (West Bengal)	Lips
48	Nandani	Birbhum (West Bengal)	Necklace
49	Indrakshi	Trincomalee (Sri Lanka)	Anklet
50	Ambika	Virat (Location Unknown)	Toe
51	Mangalaguri	Gaya (Bihar)	Breast Piece
52	Ambaji	Gujarat	Heart

Sapt Mokshapuri- अयोध्या मथुरा माया काशी काञ्ची अवंतिका। पुरी द्वारावती चैव सप्तैता मोक्षदायिकाः।

That is, Ayodhya, Mathura, Maya (Haridwar), Kashi, Kanchipuram, Avantika (Ujjain) and Dwarkapuri are the seven holy cities. Apart from these, many ancient pilgrimage Centres are mentioned in ancient scriptures.

Kumbh Mela- The world famous Kumbh Mela is not only the main center of faith of Sanatan Dharma but also a centre of curiosity and research of scientists of most countries of the world. It is mentioned in our texts about

Know this also-

- When Guru Transits in Aquarius and Sun transits in Aries, then the Kumbh Mela is organized in Haridwar.
- When Jupiter transits in Aries and Sun and Moon transit in Capricorn, then the Kumbh Mela is organized in Prayagraj.
- Kumbh Mela is held at Godavari (Nashik) when Jupiter and Sun transit in Aquarius.
- Simhastha Kumbh Mela is organized on the Kshipra coast (Ujjayini) when Sun transits in Aries and Jupiter in Leo.

organizing Kumbh Melas that- देवानां द्वादशा होभोर्मर्त्ये द्वादशवत्सरैः। जायन्ते कुम्भपर्वाणि तथा द्वादश

संख्यया:॥ Kumbh Mela is organized when the conjunction of Sun, Moon and Jupiter is on a specific zodiac sign. The four Kumbh Mela places in India are indicated in this verse - गङ्गाद्वारे प्रयागे च धारा गोदावरी तटे। कलसाख्योहि योगोहयं प्रोच्यते शङ्करादिभिः॥ Kumbh Mahamela is organized every three Years i.e. at every place in 12 Years in Haridwar, Prayagraj, Ujjain, Nashik.

Regarding the organization of Kumbh Melas, there is a story that at the time of Samudra Manthan, there was a dispute between the gods and the demons about the amrit kalash. Then some drops of nectar had fallen at four places - Prayagraj (Uttar Pradesh), Haridwar (Uttarakhand), Ujjain (Madhya Pradesh) and Nashik (Maharashtra). Kumbh Mela is held once every four Years at each of these places i.e. at one place it is repeated in twelve Years. Kumbh Mela has special



significance in our scriptures. People from all over the country come to participate in these Kumbh Melas. At that time it seems as if all the saints of Maa Bharati have gathered at one place. Thus, in Kumbh Melas, the unity and integrity of India is seen.

Importance of pilgrimage sites-

1. **Positive energy and health benefits-** According to ancient beliefs, the most positive energy flows on pilgrimages and religious places. A person traveling to these places is always full of energy and positive thinking. A visit to religious places is important not only from the point of view of charity but also from the point of view of health benefits.
2. **Increasing the gross knowledge of the person -** One of the importance of pilgrimage sites is that visiting them increases our geographical, spiritual and historical knowledge. During the journey, we get the opportunity to know the geography and history of many places, as well as we also get acquainted with the art, culture, tradition associated with them. Pilgrimage increases a person's cultural and social knowledge.
3. **Religious significance-** Char Dham, Saat Puri, Dwadash Jyotirlinga and many Sarita, Sir, Upvan come under the category of pilgrimages. There is a strong belief in Hinduism that religious benefits can be obtained by visiting, abode, bathing, bhajans, worshipping etc. Pilgrimage is also described in the Vedas and Puranas. For every Hindu, it is a virtuous deed to do pilgrimage. Keeping this importance of yatras in time, Adi Shankaracharya, the originator of Advaita mat born in Kerala, had envisaged a visit to Chardham. These visits to Chardham also provide an opportunity to know, identify, connect and love our nation with harmony in life.
4. **Economic importance-** These pilgrimage sites have religious or spiritual importance as well as economic importance. Due to these pilgrimages, tourism has been established as a business today. Lakhs of pilgrims visit the shrines every year, providing employment to the people of the respective areas.
5. **Historical Importance-** During the pilgrimage, we get the opportunity to visit many historical and archaeological places, which increases our knowledge. These places remind the lives of great men who inspire, encourage, live, strength, courage and light to the viewer. History is the creator of life itself. Future building is closely related to the experiences of the past.
6. **Philosophical significance-** The philosophical significance of pilgrimage is that every planet-constellation of the entire universe is orbiting some star. This parikrama is the truth of life. The whole life of a person is a cycle. Symbols like Parikrama have been created to understand this chakra. The whole creation is contained in Brahma, all have originated from him, and we can circle the pilgrimage sites and assume that we have circumambulated the whole creation.

To undertake a pilgrimage, a person leaves his home, family, village and city and sees and understands the climate, lifestyle, clothing, food, customs etc. of the



country and the world. Pilgrimages fulfill the spirit of वसुधैव कुटुम्बकम् by binding people together.

Question

Multiple Choice Questions-

1. The term Baikunth Dham has been given to
A. Badrinath Dham B. Dwarka Dham
C. Jagannath Puri Dham D. Rameshwaram Dham
2. The famous Jwala Ji Shaktipeeth is located in
A. Veerbhum (P. Bengal) B. Pushkar (Rajasthan)
C. Kangra (Himachal Pradesh) D. Kurukshetra (Haryana)
3. A huge flood and landslide occurred in the famous pilgrimage site Kedarnath in
A. June 2012s B. In June 2013
C. In June 2014 D. In June 2015
4. Shri Vishwanath Jyotirlinga is known as
A. Badrinath Dham B. Shrikashi Vishwanath
C. Bholenath D. the infinite time

Fill in the blanks-

1. Shrisail Jyotirlinga is Located in the state of..... (Uttar Pradesh)
Andhra Pradesh)
2. Number of Shakti Peethas are..... (52/53)
3. Deoghar is located in the state of..... (Tamil Nadu/Jharkhand)
4. Contribution of pilgrims to GDP is. (2.32%/3.23%)

Write the true/false-

1. The city of Avantika is included in the seven Mokshadayini Puris. True/False
2. Kumbh Mela is also organized in Nashik. True/False
3. Maharaja Ranjit Singh had made the peaks of Kashi Vishwanath Temple Golden. True/False
4. Pilgrimages and religious places receive the most positive energy. True/False

Match the pair correctly

- | | |
|-------------------|-----------|
| 1. Badrinath | A. South |
| 2. Dwarka | B. East |
| 3. Jagannath Puri | C. West |
| 4. Rameneshwaram | D. Answer |

Very short answer questions-

1. Write the definition of 'pilgrimage'.
2. What are the main char dhams?
3. Which is the capital of Lord Shiva?
4. What is the number of Shaktipeeths mentioned in Devi Bhagwat Purana?



5. Tell the distance from Dwarka to Visit Dwarka.

Short Answer Questions

1. What do you understand by saptapuris?
2. What do you know about Mahakaleshwar Jyotirlinga?
3. Write a comment on Rameshwaram Jyotirlinga.
4. Mention the names and places of the Dasha Shaktipeeths.
5. What do you know about Kumbh Mela?

Long Answer Questions

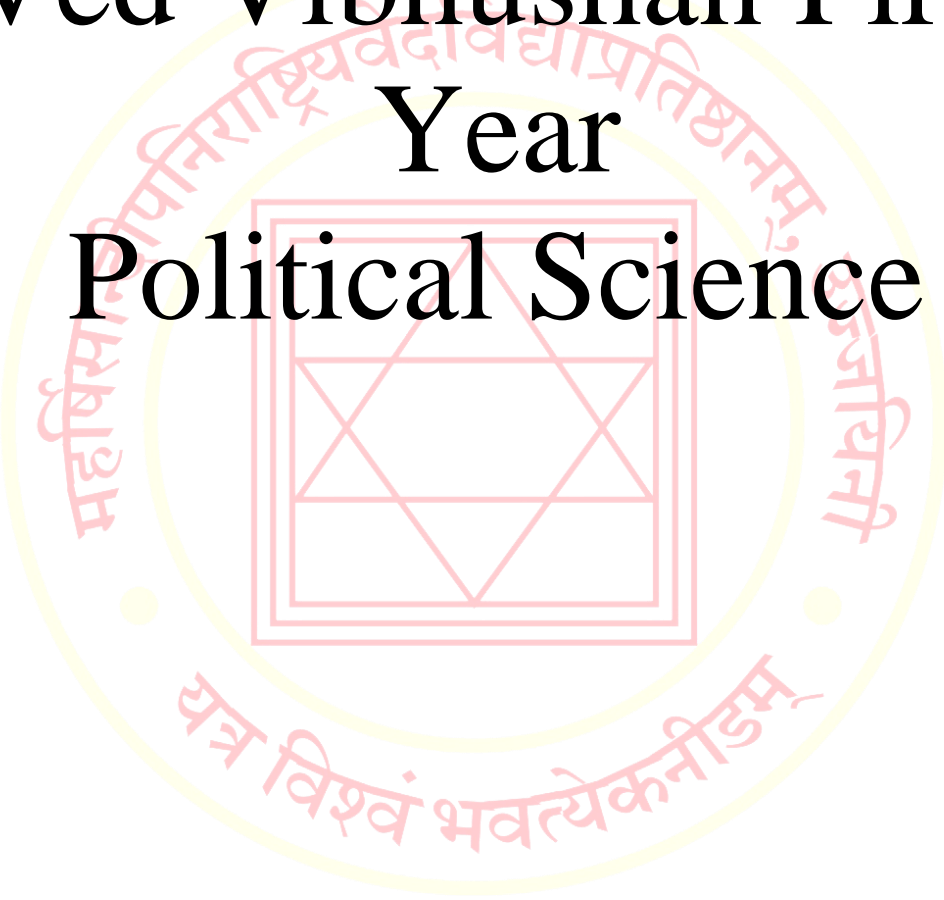
1. Describe the Char Dham pilgrimage sites of India.
2. Explain the importance of pilgrimage in detail.

Project

1. Make a list of pilgrimage places near you and describe any two pilgrimages.



Ved Vibhushan First Year Political Science



Chapter-13

Constitution

In this chapter- Constitution and its functions, system of bringing the Constitution into practice, fundamental provisions of the Constitution, balanced outline of institutions, composition of the Indian Constitution, functioning of the Indian Constituent Assembly, institutional arrangements, philosophy of the Constitution, political philosophy of the Indian Constitution. , Constitution is a living document, is the Constitution changeable? Constitutional amendment, Basic structure of the Constitution and its development, Criticism of the Indian Constitution, Impact of Vedic literature on the Indian Constitution.

Constitution- The set of rules and principles governed by a country or state is called a constitution. In the absence of a Constitution, anarchy prevails in the state. Therefore, constitutions are a set of publicly recognized basic rules that all citizens of that country have faith in. The Constitution compiles elements such as the nature of the state, the process of election of the government, the distribution of powers, the rights and duties of the citizens, the judicial process, policy making, etc. The Constitution of India is the largest and written constitution in the world. The source of power of the Indian Constitution is the Indian people.

Functions of the Constitution-

1. **Establishment of coordination and trust-**The first and foremost function of the Constitution is to establish coordination, fraternity, public interest, development of nation and nationality, internal and external peace and administrative and judicial system among the citizen groups residing in any country. People speaking of different religions, sects, traditions and languages reside in our country. This diversity is called the factor of Indian unity. The fundamental rights, duties, judicial system, election process etc. enshrined in the Indian Constitution strengthen the faith and public coordination in the Constitution and governance among the Indian citizens.
2. **Characteristics of decision-making power-**The second major function of the Constitution is the distribution of decision-making power in the state. Constitution is a set of basic principles of governance of a country on the basis of which the state is created and governed. The Constitution ensures who and how will the government and the law be made. In the Indian Constitution, the power of decision-making is directly and indirectly vested in the public.
3. **Determining limits on the powers of the government-** The third function of the Constitution is to determine the limit of powers a government can make and enforce laws for the citizens of its country. Neither the government nor the people can violate the limits set by the Constitution. The Constitution regulates the powers of the government in many ways. For example, the fundamental rights conferred by the Constitution to citizens are the easiest way



to limit the powers of the government. Fundamental rights can be limited only in a national emergency by the government.

4. **Achieving the aspirations and goals of the society-** The fourth function of the Constitution is to achieve the aspirations and goals of the people. The Constitution also provides such an enabling structure to the government that the government is able to fulfill the aspirations and goals of the society and establish a just society. The Indian Constitution gives the government the power to implement some positive, public welfare works with the help of law.
5. **The basic identity of the nation-** The system of governance of any nation in the world is identified by the constitution there. Many basic political and moral rules have been accepted in all the constitutions of the world. For example, the Indian Constitution does not recognize ethnicity or race as the basis of citizenship, whereas the German constitution expresses the German race. The Directive Principles of State Policy enshrined in our Constitution require the Government to fulfil certain aspirations of the people. We exercise our individual aspirations, goals and freedoms within constitutional norms.

Know this also-

- The South African constitution has entrusted the government there with the responsibility of protecting the environment, protecting people from unjust discrimination and providing housing and health facilities for all.
- In the Indonesian constitution, the government has been entrusted with the responsibility of formulating the national education policy, its operation and the care of poor and orphaned children.

From the mention of these functions done by the Constitution, it is clear why the Constitution is necessary. The provisions mentioned in the Constitution make it clear how the state will be formed and what principles it will follow. In most countries of the world such as India and America, the Constitution is a written document. England has a wide range of documents and decisions in place of a written constitution,

collectively called the Constitution.

The system of putting the Constitution into circulation- The success or failure of a constitution depends on its existence, the makers and their power. Successful national movements were followed by the constitutions of India, South Africa and the United States. The Constitution of India was framed by the Constituent Assembly between December 1946 and November 1949 AD. Its source of inspiration was diverse national movements. The final draft of our Constitution reflects the broad national consensus.

Fundamental provisions of the Constitution- The respect of the citizens of a constitution is due to the public welfare provisions contained in the Constitution. It is through the Constitution that a society is identified as a collective entity. A successful Constitution establishes just governance while maximising the liberty, equality of its citizens.



Multi-party democracy started in Nepal in 1990 AD, but many powers were vested in the king there. In Nepal, armed political movements were launched to restructure government and politics. Nepal became a democratic republic in 2008 and adopted a new constitution in 2015 AD.

Know this also-

- From 1948 AD to 1990 AD, the King of Nepal had given five constitutions to Nepal.

Balanced framework of institutions- For a balanced framework of the Constitution, the powers should be divided into constitutional institutions. If this happens, if an institution wants to destroy the Constitution, another institution will control it. This rule of obstruction and balance ensures the success of the constitution of any nation. The powers in the Indian Constitution are divided into constitutional institutions like legislature, executive, judiciary.

The making of the Indian Constitution- The Constitution of India has been drafted by an elected Constituent Assembly on the proposal of the Cabinet

Know this also-

- Stafford Cripps, Penthik Lawrence and A.K. B. Alexander was On January 24, 1950, Dr. Rajendra Prasad was elected the first President of India by the Constituent Assembly. Initially our constitution had 22 parts 395 articles and 8 schedules, currently there are 25 parts 395 articles and 12 schedules.

Mission. The first meeting of the Constituent Assembly started on December 9, 1946, in the presence of 389 members under the chairmanship of Dr. Sachidanand Sinha (Temporary Chairman). On December 11, Dr. Rajendra Prasad was elected the permanent President of the Constituent Assembly and on

December 13, the objective proposal of the Constitution was presented by Pandit Jawaharlal Nehru. After partition on August 14, 1947, the number of members of the Indian Constituent Assembly came down to 299. After deliberations, the Indian Constitution was adopted and enacted on November 26, 1949 (Margashirsha Shukla Saptami) in the presence of 284 members.

Procedure of Constituent Assembly of India- Indian Constitution was drafted by the Constituent Assembly considering national interest as paramount. Despite ideological opposition among the members of the Constituent Assembly, in the interest of the nation, everyone organized and completed the task of constitution making collaboratively and carefully. The basic premise of the Indian Constitution is public welfare, the establishment of a non-discriminatory society and universal adult suffrage. 22 committees were formed by the Constituent Assembly for the making of the Constitution. It took two Years, eleven

Know this also-

- The first attempt to prepare a constitution for India informally took place in 1895 in the name of "Constitution of India Bill".

months and eighteen days to prepare the Indian Constitution. The meetings of the Constituent Assembly lasted for 166 days during this period. The Constituent Assembly gave shape to the basic traditions of India and the principles inherited



from the national movement in the Indian Constitution. The Preamble, called the philosophy of the Indian Constitution, has compiled the objectives, aspirations and values of the Constitution. The main points of the Preamble are: 1. to make India a sovereign, socialist, secular, democratic republic 2. To provide justice (social, economic and political) to all its citizens, freedom (thought, expression, belief, religion and worship). 3. Dignity of the individual 4. Fraternity that ensures the unity and integrity of the nation.

Table 13.1		
Major Committees Of Indian Constitution Making		
S.	Committees	President
1.	Union Constitution Committee	Jawaharlal Nehru
2.	Provincial Constitution Committee	Ballabh Bhai Patel
3.	Union Power Committee	Jawaharlal Nehru
4.	Advisory Committee	Ballabh Bhai Patel
5.	Procedure Regulation Committee	Dr. Rajendra Prasad
6.	Drafting Committee	Dr. Bhimrao Ambedkar

Institutional Arrangements- Parliamentary and federal governance for the country has been accepted by the Constituent Assembly. The Constitution establishes a balance of power between various organs of governance such as legislature, executive and judiciary as well as distribution of powers between the central and state governments. The framers of our Constitution have taken the best out of other constitutional traditions of the world. The Constitution of India was prepared after a thorough study of the constitutions of about 60 countries. For example, about 200 provisions in the Indian Constitution are 'Government of India Act 1935', supremacy and fundamental rights of the Constitution have been taken from America, Parliamentary Governance System Britain, Directive Principles Ireland, Fundamental Duties Russia and Emergency provisions have been taken from Germany.

Philosophy of the Constitution- The basic basis of any constitution is equality before the law. The law cannot discriminate between citizens on religious or linguistic grounds. Due to the close relationship between law and moral values, there is a need to adopt an ethical approach towards the Constitution. There are three main things in the constitution of any country, which are called the philosophy of that constitution. 1. There should be clarity on the concepts used in the Constitution such as rights, citizenship, democracy, etc. 2. There should be a deep grasp on the basic ideals of the Constitution and the society and governance system should be completely transparent. 3. Theoretically, the ideals of the Constitution should be completely transparent, reasonable and the possibilities of reform in accordance with the future should be strong.

Constitution is a tool for democratic change- The Constitution paves the way for democratic change by blocking the autocracy of the state. It provides



opportunities to the weaker sections to come to power and social, civil, political etc. rights.

Why is there a need for a review of the Constituent Assembly? Our Constitution is the history of our present. There has been no revolutionary change in the conditions of the present time as compared to the conditions at the time of constitution making. When constitutional practices begin to be neglected and challenged, it is more relevant for us to observe and read and analyse the debates of the Constituent Assembly to understand the values of the Constitution.

Political philosophy of Indian Constitution- Indian Constitution is committed to freedom, equality, democracy, social justice, national unity. Our Constitution emphasises that its philosophy should be practiced peacefully and democratically.

Civil liberties- Indian Constitution is committed to the freedom of citizens. According to the Constitution, a person has complete freedom in his areas of interest, thought, expression, costumes, food, living, religion etc. Raja Ram Mohan Roy emphasized the freedom of expression of the individual. This continued to arise even in the freedom movement.

Social justice- always gives importance to the individual in liberalism, social justice and community life values. Social justice means that there will be no discrimination by the state on the basis of social status among the citizens. The society should be inclusive and resources should be divided on the basis of equality. The provision of reservation for Scheduled Castes and Scheduled Tribes in the Indian Constitution is the best example of this.

Respect for diversity and rights of minorities- In India with different types of diversities such as linguistic, religious, regional, etc., it was a difficult challenge for the framers of the Constitution to establish equality in Indian society. In order to establish equality in the society, the framers of the Constitution have worked to empower the minorities by giving them various rights in the Constitution.

Secularism- Secularism means a common attitude towards all religions. The Constitution and the government are neutral in terms of religion. According to which every person has the right to choose religion according to his wish. The Constitution and the government do not discriminate against anyone on the basis of religion. They neither favour nor oppose any religion. Secularism works to bind everyone in the thread of unity. It strengthens the democratic system. Its goal is morality and human welfare.

Universal Adult voting rights - Through universal adult suffrage, the people of the country express their aspirations. The Constitution of India provides the right to vote to every adult citizen (attaining the age of 18 Years) without any discrimination. The citizens of the country play an important role in building a healthy democracy. They elect a fair government by their voting rights. Universal suffrage promotes equality in politics.

Unionism- Unionism is a form of government in which the powers are divided between the central and state governments. Written constitution, division of



powers, dual governance system, supremacy of constitution etc. are the main features of Unionism. There seems to be a contradictory position on Unionism in the Indian Constitution. On the one hand, there is a concept of a strong central government in the Constitution. On the other hand, some provinces have been declared as special category states in the constitution.

Procedural achievements- In addition to the above basic features of the Indian Constitution, there are also some procedural achievements of the Constitution.

For example, the basis of the Indian Constitution is trust and political consultation. Decisions on an important subject were taken unanimously by the Constituent Assembly. From the point of view of unity and integrity of the nation, the Emphasis has been laid on the national identity of the citizens in the Indian Constitution. Sardar Vallabhbhai Patel has said that "We have to forget that there is such a thing as a minority or majority in this country. There is only one community in India."

Know this also-

- Funds for the development of special category states are provided by the central government in the form of 90% grant and 10% loan. Under Article 370 of Part-21 of the Indian Constitution, Jammu and Kashmir was given the category of special state in 1969 AD. This special category has been abolished on 5 August 2019 AD. Apart from this, Nagaland, Assam, Himachal Pradesh, Manipur, Meghalaya, Tripura, Arunachal Pradesh, Mizoram, Sikkim and Uttarakhand have been declared as special category states till Article 371A-J of the Constitution.

Constitution is a living document- Our Constitution has been termed as a living document because it works like a living being, experienceable and according to the situation. In a changing society, our Constitution is functioning effectively due to its dynamism, openness of interpretations and its variability according to changing circumstances.

Are constitutions changeable? Various countries of the world have re-drafted their constitutions due to social changes and political instability, such as the Soviet Union four times in 74 Years and France five times in the period from 1793 to 1958 AD. But in the context of the Indian Constitution, the situation is different from the constitutions of other countries of the world. The reason for this is the rigidity and flexibility of the Indian Constitution. The basic concept of the Constitution is immutable but modifiable according to the situation.

Know this also-

- The majority procedure for amendment of the constitution is mentioned in article 368 of the constitution.
- There have been 104 amendments in the Indian Constitution till 2020 AD.

Constitution Amendment- The principle of special majority and the principle of public participation are important in various processes of amending the constitutions of different countries of the world. In the United States, South



Africa and Russia, there is a special majority principle, while in Switzerland, Russia and Italy, the public has the right to amend the constitution.

The process of amendment to the Indian Constitution begins with the Parliament. This modification takes place in three ways- 1. Simple majority 2. Special majority 3. Special majority and consent of states. The formation of new states, changes in the name, boundary or territory of the states, the system of administration of union territories, etc. are amended by a simple majority of parliament. The Constitution is amended by the Parliament with a special majority in fundamental rights, Directive Principles of State Policy, etc. A special majority means two-thirds of the members in the House of Parliament. Special majority and consent of states are required to amend the election of the President, its functioning, the expansion of the executive power of the Union and the States, the High Courts of the Union and states, legislative relations in the Union and the States, impeachment, etc. The Constitution Amendment Bill cannot be sent back to Parliament for reconsideration by the President.

Basic structure of the constitution and its development- The basic structure of the Constitution means the provisions contained in the Constitution that present the Constitution and Indian political and democratic ideals. These provisions cannot be removed even by constitutional amendments. The principle of basic structure can be linked to the Kesavananda Bharati case. The basic structure of the Constitution cannot be changed even by Parliament under Article 368.

Contribution of judiciary- The judiciary has played the role of a strong pillar to protect the Constitution. The judiciary is considered to be the guardian of the Constitution due to its work of protecting civil rights and freedoms. Unconstitutional decisions are rejected by the judiciary to uphold the impartiality and effectiveness of the Constitution.

Maturity of politicians- Politicians in India have always believed in the dignity, freedom, equality, public welfare, national unity etc. of the individual. It is the proper approach of the Constitution that makes it popular among the masses.

Criticism of the Indian Constitution- Many critics do not consider the Indian Constitution as a firm document because it is highly flexible. If the Indian Constitution had been given strictness, the provisions of many constitutional institutions of public interest such as the Election Commission, Union Public Service Commission, etc. would have been omitted from the Constitution, so the framers of the Constitution have made the Constitution flexible. Critics of the Constitution are of the opinion that the members of the Indian Constituent Assembly were not elected by universal suffrage. Therefore, there is a lack of public representation in the making of the Constitution. But the study of the discussions of the Constituent Assembly shows that the members of the Constituent Assembly did not give priority to their personal matters and gave priority to matters of society and national interest. The Indian Constitution is also criticised by saying that the Indian Constitution is a foreign document and copy.



In fact, it is not that the Indian Constitution is influenced by the spirit of equality, freedom, justice, fraternity, public welfare, etc. of our Vedic literature and Indian traditions.

Impact of Vedic Literature on Indian Constitution- The fundamental concept of Indian Constitution - Freedom, Justice, Fraternity, Public Welfare, Equality, Vasudhaiva Kutumbakam etc. is influenced by Vedic literature. In the context of equality, the Vedas are directed that- मित्रास्याहं चक्षुषा सर्वाणि भूतानि समीक्षे । मित्रस्य चक्षुषा सर्वाणि समीक्षामहे ॥ (यजुर्वेद 36.18) That is, do not blaspheme those who commit treason. We should think in such a way that everyone looks at me from a friend's point of view. I also look at them all from the point of view of friends. Let us be friendly with each other. मा भ्राता भ्रातरं द्विषन् मा स्वसारमुत स्वसा । सम्यञ्चः सव्रता भूत्वा वाचं भद्रया ॥ (अथर्ववेद 3.30.3) That is, do not hate brothers and sisters. Sister, don't hate your sister. All of them should unite, do their own deeds together, and speak the best welfare speech. It is clear from the observation of these mantras that the spirit of equality inherent in the Indian Constitution was there in Vedic literature from the beginning of creation.

Table 13.2
Key Articles of the Indian Constitution

main topic	mentioned in the paragraph
1	Name of the union and provision of state territory
3	Provision for change of state name, boundary and creation of new states
12 to 35	provision of fundamental rights of citizens
14	right to equality
17	abolition of untouchability
21	life and personal liberty
32	right to constitutional remedies
40	organization of village panchayats
51	Provision to promote international peace and security
51 (k)	fundamental duties of citizens
55	provision of the method of election of the President
58	provision of qualifications of the President
61	Provision for impeachment process on the President
72	provision of judicial powers of the President
352	Provision for declaration of emergency in the country
356	Proclamation of President's rule in states
360	Provision for declaration of financial emergency in the country
75	Prime Minister's provision
74	Provision for formation of Union Council of Ministers
79	constitution of parliament
95	Provision of functions and powers of Lok Sabha Speaker
110	Provision for interpretation of Money Bill
124	Establishment and constitution provision of Supreme Court
125	Provision for salary and allowances of judges
143	provision of Supreme Court advisory powers of the President

153	provision of governor in states
155	provision for the appointment of the governor
163	Provision of Council of Ministers
168	Provision for organization of Legislature
169	Provision of the right to create and dissolve the Legislative Council to the states
170	Provision for the composition of the Legislative Assemblies in the States
171	Provision for the composition of the Legislative Councils
180	Provision of the functions and powers of the Speaker of the Legislative Assembly
214	provision of high court in the states
221	Provision for salary and allowances of High Court judges
231	Provision for establishment of a common High Court for two or more States
315	Provision for establishment of Union Public Service Commission
368	provision of constitutional amendment process

Question

Multiple Choice Questions-

- Constitution of India was adopted on-
 - November 26, 1949
 - January 26, 1950
 - August 15, 1947
 - The January 30, 1948
- Source of power of the Constitution is-
 - Local Government
 - State Government
 - Central Government
 - public
- Fundamental Rights in the Constitution have been taken from-
 - Russia
 - Canada
 - America
 - Britain
- Age of voting rights in India is-
 - 16 Years
 - 18 Years
 - 21 Years
 - 25 Years

Fill in the blanks-

- Objective Proposals of the Constitution were presented by.....
(Pt. Nehru/Gandhiji)
- amendments have been made in the Constitution by 2020. (102/104)
- Indian Constitution was adopted on.....
(Margashirsha Shukla Saptami/Margashirsha Shukla Navami)
- Democratic Republic of Nepal formed in..... (2008 AD/2008) 2010 AD)

Write the true/false-

- The first meeting of the Constitution was held on December 9, 1946.
True/False
- Dr. Rajendra Prasad was the Chairman of the Drafting Committee. True/False
- The age of voting rights has been fixed at 21 Years. True/False
- At present, there are 12 Schedules in the Indian Constitution. True/False



Match the pair correctly-

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------|
| 1. Fundamental Rights | A. From Britain |
| 2. Fundamental Duties | B. From Ireland |
| 3. Parliamentary System of Government | C. From USA |
| 4. Directive Principles | D. From Russia |

Very short answer questions-

1. Give the definition of constitution.
2. Fundamental rights are mentioned in which articles of the Constitution?
3. When was the objective proposal submitted?
4. Who is called the soul of the Constitution?
5. What is universal adult franchise?

Short Answer Questions-

1. State the features of the Indian Constitution.
2. State any three requirements of the Constitution.
3. What are the provisions taken in the Indian Constitution from America and Russia?
4. Explain the influence of Vedic literature on the Indian Constitution?

Long Answer Questions-

1. Explain the importance of the Constitution.
2. Explain in detail the process of amending the Constitution.

Project Work-

1. Collect information about the biographies of Dr. Rajendra Prasad and Dr. B.R. Ambedkar, members of the Constituent Assembly.



Chapter-14

Aspects of Indian Polity

In this chapter- Legislature, Functions of Parliament, Lok Sabha, Rajya Sabha, Process of law making by Parliament, Parliamentary Committees, Executive, Types of Executive, Parliamentary Executive in India, President, Prime Minister, Council of Ministers, Permanent Executive, Judiciary, Judiciary Functions of, structure of the judiciary.

The three parts of The Indian System of Government are known as legislature, executive and judiciary. Together, these three parts of government play their role in maintaining governance and law and order and public welfare. In this chapter, we will study the three major organs of government in detail.

Legislature- Legislature or legislature is the center of all democratic, political processes. The major function of the legislature is to make laws and policies. The name of our national legislature is Parliament. In India, the Parliament is responsible for law-making at the federal level. Parliament occupies a unique and central place in the Indian democratic system as parliamentary governance has been adopted in India. According to Article 79 of the Constitution, parliament is constituted by the President, Lok Sabha and Rajya Sabha. When there are two houses in a legislature, it is called a bicameral legislature. The decisions taken by one House are also sent to the other House for decision. Thus, these decisions are reconsidered. Members of Parliament (M.P.) it is said.

Know this also-

- The legislature is known by different names in different countries. For example, Parliament (India), Congress (USA), Duma (Russia), Parliament (UK) etc.

Functions of Parliament-

Control over the Executive- Parliament works to control the Executive. The Council of Ministers can function only as long as it receives a vote of confidence in the Lok Sabha. Ensuring accountable governance is the main function of Parliament. The party that gets a majority in Parliament is called the ruling party and all the parties opposing it are called the opposition party. The leader of the majority party becomes the Prime Minister and forms the Cabinet on the advice of the President.

Making laws- The main function of the Parliament is to make various laws and approve them. In reality, the work of law making is done by the bureaucracy under the control of an executive minister. The work of articulating and presenting the purpose of the law in the Parliament is done by the Cabinet.

Financial Control- Parliament controls the income and expenditure of public funds through the annual budget. The government is required to seek parliament's approval before levying any new tax. The financial powers of Parliament provide funds to the government.



Deliberation- The whole country gets information about issues of public importance from Parliament because issues of public interest and government policies are discussed on the table of both houses of Parliament. Thus, the Government not only gets the advice of Parliament but also helps in knowing the shortcomings of its policies.

Constitutional work- Parliament is the only constitutional body where a proposal to amend the Constitution is presented. Both houses of Parliament have the same constitutional powers.

Election related work- Parliament participates in the election of President and Vice President. It deals with the election of members, presiding and sub-chair office-bearers of various parliamentary committees.

Judicial Functions- The judicial functions of Parliament include consideration of proposals for the discharge of the President, Vice President, Supreme and High Court judges by impeachment.

Representation- Parliament represents the views of various social, religious, economic and regional groups of the country.

In the Indian parliamentary system, there are two houses of parliament- **Lok Sabha** and **Rajya Sabha**. The House of the People is called the Lok Sabha and the Council of States is called the Rajya Sabha.

1. **Lok Sabha-** It is the temporary and lower or first house of Parliament. According to Article 81 of the Constitution, the Lok Sabha can have a maximum of 550 members, but at present our Parliament has 543 members. Lok Sabha members (530 members from states and 13 members from union territories) are elected by direct election system.

Eligibility of Lok Sabha Members-

1. He is a citizen of India.
2. Have completed 25 Years of age.
3. Don't be crazy or crazy.
4. Do not hold any position of profit.

He has not been punished by any court for 2 Years or more for any offence.

The term of the Lok Sabha is 5 Years but it can also be dissolved prematurely by the President. In case of emergency, the term of Lok Sabha can be extended for 1 year. The sessions of Lok Sabha and Rajya Sabha are called and adjourned by the President. 1/10 of the member (55 members) is required for the quorum of the Lok Sabha. The Joint Session is presided over by the Speaker of the Lok Sabha.

Privileges of Rajya Sabha and Lok Sabha - Most of the functions and powers of Lok Sabha and Rajya Sabha are the same, which we have studied under the functions of Parliament. In the bicameral system of governance, Rajya Sabha and Lok Sabha have certain privileges, which are as follows:

Know this also-

- Till 2019, the President nominates 2 members (Anglo-Indian) in the Lok Sabha, but according to the 104th Constitutional Amendment Act 2019, their nomination has been removed.



1. Article 312 empowers the Rajya Sabha to create all-India services.
2. The Rajya Sabha can, by Article 249, declare a subject in the State List to be of national importance.
3. The Lok Sabha has been given important powers in terms of finance by the Constitution. Money Bills are introduced only in the Lok Sabha. The Rajya Sabha can keep the money bill passed by the Lok Sabha for a maximum of 14 days. After this period, the Money Bill is automatically considered to have been passed by the Rajya Sabha. It is the Lok Sabha Speaker who decides whether a bill is a money bill or not.

Know this also-

- The Lok Sabha was constituted for the first time in India on April 2, 1952.
- The first sitting of the Lok Sabha started on 13th May, 1952.
- In terms of area, Ladakh is the largest and Lakshadweep is the smallest Lok Sabha constituency in India.

2. **Rajya Sabha-** Rajya Sabha is the upper house of Parliament, which never dissolves. The term of its members is 6 Years. One-third of its members retire every two Years. The same number of new members are elected in the vacant places. The Rajya Sabha represents the federal nature of the Constitution in Parliament. There are two types of members in the Rajya Sabha- elected and nominated. According to Article 80 of the Constitution, the Rajya Sabha can have a maximum of 250 members but currently has 245 members. Of these, 233 members are elected by the legislatures of states and union territories (Delhi,

Know this also-

- Members of Rajya Sabha can also become Prime Minister and ministers in the Union Council of Ministers.

Know this also-

- The Rajya Sabha was first constituted on April 3, 1952.
- The first sitting of the Rajya Sabha began on 13 May 1952.
- Formula of single transferable vote system- [Total votes/Total winning candidates]
- Rajya Sabha has so far exercised the power to declare a subject of national importance in 1952 AD and 1986 AD.

Puducherry and Jammu and Kashmir) and 12 members are nominated by the President. The nominated members are scholars with special knowledge and practical experience in literature, education, science, art, administration, culture or their field. The ex-officio Chairman of the Rajya Sabha is the Vice President. A Deputy Chairman is elected from among the members of the Rajya Sabha, who performs his duties in the absence of the Chairman. Rajya Sabha members are

elected by a single transferable vote system of proportional representation by members of state legislative assemblies.



Qualifications of Rajya Sabha Member- To be elected as a Member of Rajya Sabha, the minimum age of a person should be 30 Years. The name of the state he wants to represent should be in the voter list of that state. Apart from this, other qualifications are similar to those of Lok Sabha members.

The legislature is the center of democratic political processes along with the law-making institution. Many scenes are seen in Parliament, such as discussion, exit, protest, consensus, concern and cooperation in the House, etc. All of them serve very important objectives, which are the basis of democracy. In India, the Cabinet ensures and implements policy-making initiatives and governance agendas. It is the most democratic and open forum for debate.

Law making process by Parliament- Before introducing a Bill in Parliament, there is a lot of discussion on what is the need of that Bill. A political party can put pressure on the government to introduce a bill with the intention of fulfilling its election promises or even with the intention of winning the upcoming elections. Many interest groups, media and civil society organisations also put pressure on the government to bring a bill. Therefore, making laws is not only a legislative process but also a political process. The Ministry to which the Bill belongs is drafted by the Ministry. Any Member can introduce an ordinary Bill in any House of Parliament. When a general bill is passed by one House, it is sent to another House. As you know, for any bill to be implemented, it is necessary to get a majority in both the Houses. After getting a majority by both the Houses of Parliament, that Bill is sent to the President for his assent. When signed by the President, that Bill becomes law. The Indian Parliament mainly has three sessions in a year:



Figure 14.1- Proceedings in Lok Sabha

1. **Budget Session-** This session is held between February and May.
2. **Monsoon Session-** This session is held from July to September.
3. **Winter Session-** This session is held between November and December.

Question time - In the meeting of both the Houses of Parliament, the time of Question time is from 11 am to 12 noon every day. The government also gets significant feedback from the questions of the MPs. There are four types of questions asked in question hour-

1. **Starred Questions-** Questions that the Member immediately seeks answers in the House. These are answered orally.
2. **Unstarred Questions-** Questions that the Member seeks answers to in writing.
3. **Supplementary Questions-** Questions asked to clarify questions which have been answered in the House.

4. **Short Notice Questions-** Questions which are of urgent public importance and can be asked by giving notice within the period of 10 days prescribed for ordinary questions.

Know this also-

- In 1983, the system of Standing Committees of the Parliament was developed. Presently the number of these standing committees is 20.

Zero Hour- The time from 12 o'clock to 1 o'clock after the question hour is called Zero Hour. At this time, MPs can ask questions without prior notice.

Parliamentary Committees- Parliament is functioning during the session, due to which there is limited time for legislative and daily work. Therefore, for the smooth functioning and editing of the day-to-day affairs of Parliament, many committees have been formed, which are called Parliamentary Committees. The members of these committees are members of both houses of Parliament. The Bills are looked after by parliamentary committees, studying demands for grants of various ministries, examining departmental expenditure, cases of corruption etc. Public Accounts Committee, Finance Committee, Estimates Committee, Rules Committee, Linguistic Committee etc. are the major parliamentary committees. In addition to these, joint committees can also be constituted in Parliament, which can jointly discuss a bill and investigate financial irregularities.

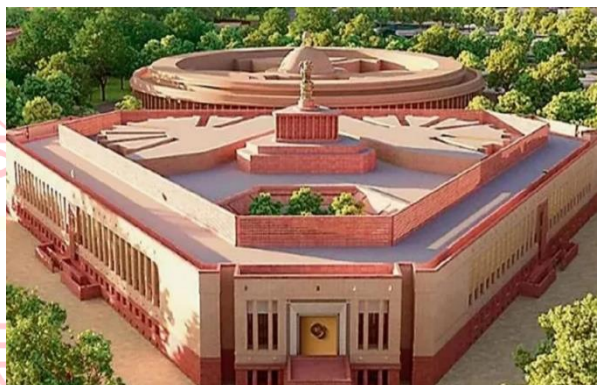


Figure 14.2- Indian Parliament Building

Executive- The organ of the government which, along with making policy decisions, ensures and enforces rules and laws, is called the executive. The Prime Minister of the government and his ministers are called the permanent executive (administrative executive) of the people of the administrative group working in the political executive and the executive.

Types of Executive- The executive is mainly divided into a system based on the principle of collective leadership and the principle of single leadership.

Parliamentary Executive in India- The framers of the Indian Constitution wanted a government in India, based on past experiences, which was sensitive and responsive to the expectations of the people. The second option was the presidential executive instead of the parliamentary executive, but the presidential executive places great emphasis on the president's post as the chief executive and considers the president as the source of all powers. The executive dependent on the majority of parliament is called the parliamentary executive. There are many procedures in the parliamentary system which ensure that the executive, the legislature is accountable to and also controls the representatives of the people. Therefore, the Indian Constitution accepts the parliamentary system of

governance at the central and provincial level. The Central Executive is composed of the President, the Prime Minister and the Council of Ministers. It is formally headed by the President while the practical Prime Minister is the Prime Minister. The provincial level executive is formed by the Governor, Chief Minister and Council of Ministers.

Table 14.1		
Types of Executive		
system based on the principle of collective leadership		system based on the principle of single leadership
parliamentary system	semi-presidential system	presidential system
The head of government is usually the prime minister.	The President is the head of the country.	In the presidential system, the President is the head of the country.
He is the leader of the majority party in the legislature.	The Prime Minister is the head of the government.	He is the head of the government.
He is answerable to the legislature.	The Prime Minister and his Council of Ministers are accountable to the legislature.	The President is usually elected by direct vote.
The head of the country can be any of these.		He is not answerable to the legislature.
King —————→	constitutional monarchy	ceremonial head of government
President —————→	parliamentary republic	

President- Articles 52 to 72 of the Indian Constitution mention the office of the President, its powers and functions. According to Article 52, there shall be a President of India. The President is a symbol of the unity and integrity of the nation. After every general election, the President addresses the joint session of Lok Sabha and Rajya Sabha.

Election- The President is indirectly elected by secret ballot through a single transferable vote of proportional representation. The Electoral College of the President consists of members from the Lok Sabha, Rajya Sabha, State Legislative Assemblies as well as the Union Territories of Delhi, Puducherry and Jammu and Kashmir.

Qualifications-

1. He is a citizen of India.
2. Have completed 35 Years of age.



3. He is eligible to become a member of the Lok Sabha.
4. The presidential candidate's election application form must be signed by at least 50 proposers and 50 pro-MLAs or MPs.

Know this also-

- The Chief Justice of India administers the oath of office and secrecy to the President.
- The term of the President is of 5 years.
- The President can be removed even before the end of the term by the process of impeachment.
- In the event of the post of the President becoming vacant for any reason, it is mandatory to elect a new President within 6 months.
- The President sends his resignation to the Vice President in writing.
- The Speaker of the Lok Sabha presides over the joint session of the Parliament.
- At present the President of India is paid Rs 5, 00,000 and the Vice President is paid Rs 4, 00,000 per month as the Chairman of the Rajya Sabha, including other allowances.

Powers and Powers of the President- The President of India has all the executive powers. The Council of Ministers headed by the Prime Minister assists and advises the President. According to Article 108 of the Constitution, the President convenes and addresses a joint session of both houses of Parliament. The President appoints the leader of the majority party as the Prime Minister and appoints the members of the Council of Ministers on his advice. In addition, it appoints judges of the Supreme and High Courts, Comptroller and Auditor General, Attorney General, Governors, Members of various Commissions, Ambassadors, etc. The Rajya Sabha has the right to nominate 12 members as well as pardon the death penalty. Articles 352, 356 and 360 of the Indian Constitution provide emergency provisions called the President's emergency powers.

Table 14.2

Article 352	Article 356	Article 360
Proclamation Of Emergency In Case Of War, External Aggression Or Strong Insurrection	Proclamation Of President's Rule In The State	Declaration Of Financial Emergency In Case Of Financial Crisis In The Country

Privileges- The President has exclusive powers to delay or even reject a Bill (except a Money Bill) passed by Parliament. Every bill passed by Parliament is sent to the President for his assent before it becomes a law.

Vice President- The Vice President is elected by a system of proportional representation by both houses of Parliament. For this, the age of 35 Years and eligibility for election as a member of the Rajya Sabha is necessary. The candidate



for the post of Vice President should nominate 20 Members of Parliament as proposers and 20 Members of Parliament as supporters. The Vice President is the ex-officio Chairman of the Rajya Sabha with a term of 5 Years. In the absence of the President, the Vice President performs all the functions and responsibilities of the President.

Impeachment- Impeachment is a constitutional process, which is derived from the Constitution of the United States of America. Articles 61, 124(4 and 5) 217 and 218 of the Indian Constitution provide for the removal of presidents, vice-presidents, judges of the Supreme Court and high courts from office. This proposal is brought when the said functionaries have been proved to be violated, abused or incompetence of the Constitution. A minimum of 100 MPs and 50 MPs in the Rajya Sabha need signatures to present an impeachment motion in the Lok Sabha. After the Speaker of the House accepts the proposal, a three-member committee is formed to investigate the allegations and submit its report to the House. If found guilty, voting is held. For the resolution to be passed, the support of two-thirds of MPs is required.

Prime Minister- According to Article 75(1) of the Constitution, the President appoints the Prime Minister. The President usually appoints the Leader of the Majority Party in the Lok Sabha as the Prime Minister. But if no party enjoys an absolute majority, the President appoints the leader of the largest party or alliance as the Prime Minister by his discretion. In this situation, the Prime Minister appointed has to prove his majority in the Lok Sabha in a fixed time. The Prime Minister can be a member of either the Lok Sabha or the Rajya Sabha. According to the decision given by the Hon'ble Supreme Court in the year 1997, the President

Know this also-

- The Prime Minister is the ex-officio chairman of the National Development Council (NDC). Apart from this, the Prime Minister is the head of the 'Niti Aayog'.
- At present, the Prime Minister of India gets 1,60,000 monthly salary including other allowances.
- Presently the Union Ministers of India get 1,00,000 monthly basic salary along with other allowances.

can appoint any person as the Prime Minister or Minister who is not a member of either House, but such person must take membership of either House of Parliament (Lok Sabha or Rajya Sabha) within 6 months from the date of assuming office. The President administers the oath of office and secrecy to the Prime Minister. The term of the Prime Minister is usually 5 Years, but he can remain in office only as long as he has a majority in the Lok Sabha. The Prime Minister acts as a bridge between the President and the Council of Ministers. MPs are made cabinet ministers, ministers of state or deputy ministers in the cabinet according to their seniority and political importance. In the event of the Prime Minister's resignation, the Council of Ministers automatically dissolves.



Council of ministers- Article 74(1) provides for the constitution of a Council of Ministers, headed by the Prime Minister, to assist and advise the President in his functions. The Council of Ministers is individually responsible to the President and collectively to the Lok Sabha. There are three types of ministers in the Council of Ministers: Cabinet Minister, Minister of State (Independent Charge) and Deputy Minister. The Prime Minister and the Cabinet together are called the Cabinet. The salaries and allowances of the Council of Ministers are determined by the Parliament.

Permanent Executive- In India, the entire bureaucracy is known as the permanent executive. This executive works under the control of the political executive. The implementation and compliance of laws made by the political executive is done by the permanent executive. The permanent executive consists of all India services, provincial services, local government employees and all officers of public enterprises. This executive is politically neutral.

Know this also-

- Through the 91st Constitutional Amendment Act (2003 AD), it has been arranged that the number of members of the Council of Ministers shall not exceed 15 percent of the total number of members of the House (Lok Sabha at the Center and Vidhansabha in the State).

Judiciary- Judiciary is the third organ of the Indian system of governance. An independent judiciary is required to resolve disputes between individuals, groups of individuals and the government freely and fairly and to protect the Constitution. Independence of the judiciary means that the legislature and the executive should not interfere in the functioning of the judiciary in any way, so that it can carry out the functions smoothly. Further, the judiciary is not financially dependent on the executive or the legislature. Salaries and allowances of judges do not require the approval of the legislature. The actions and decisions of judges cannot be personally criticised. If someone is found guilty of contempt of court, the judiciary has the right to punish him. Parliament can discuss the conduct of judges only when it is considering a proposal (impeachment) to remove them. With this, the judiciary takes decisions independently, free from the fear of criticism.

Functions of judiciary- The functions of the judiciary are broadly divided into the following parts-



Figure- 14.3 Supreme Court

1. **Resolution of disputes-** Disputes arising out of citizens, citizens and government, two state governments and between the Centre and states are resolved by the judiciary.
2. **Judicial Review-** Only the Judiciary of India has the right to interpret the Constitution. If a law passed by Parliament violates the basic structure of the Constitution that law can be struck down by the judiciary it is called judicial review.
3. **Protection of law and implementation of fundamental rights-** The task of protecting the rights given to the citizens by the Constitution is also done by the judiciary. If the fundamental rights of a citizen are violated, he can seek their protection by taking refuge in the judiciary.

Structure of Judiciary- The Constitution of India has established an integrated judicial system. The structure of the judiciary in India is like a pyramid. In India, there are supreme courts at the highest level of judiciary, high courts at the state level and high courts at the state level, district courts at the district level and subordinate courts below it.

Supreme Court of India- It is the highest judicial institution in the country, located in New Delhi. The provisions relating to its constitution are given in Article 124. The Supreme Court of India is truly one of the most powerful courts in the world. After independence, on January 26, 1950, when the Constitution came into force in our country, the Supreme Court was formed in place of the Federal Court.

Know this also-

- Supreme Court judge V Ramaswamy was impeached for the first time in 1993. This proposal was not passed in the Lok Sabha due to lack of two-thirds majority.

Appointment of Chief and Other Judges- The judges of the Supreme Court are appointed by the President of India on the recommendation of the Collegium. In the original Constitution, a total of 8 judges, including the Chief Justice, were arranged in the Supreme Court. At present, the total number of judges in the Supreme Court is 34 (01 Chief Justice and 33 other Judges). The post of Chief Justice is the highest judicial post in India. The Chief Justice of India is also known as CJI (Chief Justice of India). The salaries and allowances of judges of the Supreme Court are determined by the Parliament from time to time. Their salaries and allowances and administrative expenses of the Court are charged on the Consolidated Fund of India.

Eligibility criteria for judges- He should be a citizen of India. A high court should have served as a judge for at least 5 Years or has been an advocate in a high court for a minimum of 10 Years or is a jurist in the opinion of the President.

Removal of Judges from office- The process of removing judges of the Supreme Court from office is very complex. Judges can be dismissed by the impeachment process only if they are proven guilty or disqualified.

Jurisdiction of the Supreme Court- The Constitution of India mentions the wide jurisdiction of the Supreme Court.



1. Fundamental or Preliminary Jurisdiction- This is available in the following cases:

- I. Disputes arising between the Union of India and one or more states.
- II. Disputes between two or more states of the Union of India.
- III. In a dispute between two or more States in which questions of their statutory rights are involved.

Know this also-

- **Tenure-** Judges can remain in their post till the age of 65 years but even before that they can give their resignation to the President.

2. Appellate Jurisdiction- The largest appellate court in the country is the Supreme Court. It has the right to hear appeals against the judgments of all high courts in India. Under this, there are 3 types of cases- i. Constitutional matters ii. Civil Cases iii. Criminal cases.

3. Consultative Jurisdiction- The President has the right to seek advice from the Supreme Court on disputes of public importance and is, therefore, it is called the highest consultative body.

4. Jurisdiction relating to reconsideration- According to Article 137 of the Constitution, the Supreme Court has the right to reconsider the order or decision given by it and, if it considers appropriate, make necessary changes in it.

5. Protector of Fundamental Rights- The Supreme Court is the protector of the fundamental rights of the people. Under Article 32 of the Constitution (Right to Constitutional Remedies), the Supreme Court takes necessary action in case of violation of fundamental rights. The Supreme Court can issue 5 types of articles to protect fundamental rights.

Table 14.3 List Of Articles Issued By The Supreme Court To Protect Fundamental Rights	
Article/Order	Tasks
Habeas Corpus	Order For The Release Of A Person Arrested For Illegal Reasons.
Mandate	Duty Order.
Prohibition	Order Not To Hear Subordinate Courts Having No Jurisdiction.
Inducement	Order To Send Pending Cases To Higher Court For Decision.
Mandate	An Order Issued By A Court, On The Performance Of Functions Outside The Constitutional Jurisdiction.

High Court- consists of State Judiciary, High Courts and Subordinate Courts. According to Article 214, a High Court is constituted in each State, but Parliament may by law also constitute a High Court for two or more States or for two or more States and Union Territories. Its judges are also appointed by the President on the advice of the Collegium. To become a judge of a High Court, at least an advocate has been an advocate in a High Court for a minimum of 10 Years or has been a



judicial officer for a minimum of 10 Years in a court. The tenure of high court judges is till the age of 62 Years. It is also a court of records. At present, the total number of High Courts in India is 25.

District Courts- District Courts have been set up to provide justice at the district level. These courts hear cases presented at the district level and appeals made on the decisions of the lower courts. The District and Sessions Judge is the supervisor and judicial officer of all the judicial courts of the district. They are appointed by the Governor in consultation with the High Court.

Subordinate Courts- These types of courts are at the lowest level. There are several categories of courts under the High Court, which have been called subordinate courts in the Constitution. They are constituted on the basis of state act law. They have different names and categories in different states. Apart from this, there are other functions of the court such as Lok Adalat, Legal Aid Committee, and Public Interest Litigation etc. We have studied them in previous classes.

Also know-

- Allahabad High Court (Uttar Pradesh) is the largest High Court in the country with a strength of 160 judges and Himachal Pradesh High Court is the smallest High Court with 13 judges. The 25th High Court of the country was established on January 1, 2019 at Amaravati in Andhra Pradesh.

Table 14.4	
12 Schedules of Indian Constitution	
first schedule	List of states and union territories and their territories
Second schedule	President, Governors, Speaker and Deputy Speaker of Rajya Sabha, Speaker and Deputy Speaker of Lok Sabha, Speaker and Deputy Speaker of Legislative Council of States, Speaker and Deputy Speaker of Legislative Assembly, Supreme Court and High Court, Comptroller and Auditor General of India, States and Union Territories and List of their territories.
Third schedule	Form of oath.
Fourth schedule	Provision for allocation of seats in the Council of States.
Fifth schedule	Provision for the administration and control of the Scheduled Areas and the Scheduled Tribes.
Sixth schedule	Provisions for the administration of tribal areas in the States of Assam, Meghalaya, Tripura and Mizoram.
Seventh schedule	Union List, State List and Concurrent List.
Eighth Schedule	List of recognized languages.
Ninth Schedule	Provisions for verification of certain Acts and Regulations.
Tenth schedule	Provisions for disqualification on the ground of defection.



Eleventh Schedule	Powers, authority and responsibilities of Panchayats.
Twelfth schedule	Powers, authority and responsibilities of municipalities.

Question

Multiple Choice Questions-

- The real head of the federal executive is-
A. Prime Minister B. President
C. Council of Ministers D. All
- The parliamentary executive means-
A. Where there is a Parliament, there is an executive.
B. Executive elected by Parliament.
C. Where Parliament functions as executive.
D. An executive which is dependent on the support of majority of Parliament.
- The impeachment can be brought in to remove the judge of the Supreme Court From the Office-
A. Lok Sabha
B. Rajya Sabha
C. In either House of Parliament
D. both Houses of Parliament together
- Article relating to constitution of High Courts in states is-
A. Article 124 B. Article 130
C. Article 214 D. Article 219
- The Other name of Legislature is known as-
A. Executive B. judiciary
C. Administrator D. None of the above

Fill in the blanks-

- Constitutional head of the federal executive is.....
(Prime Minister/President)
- A minimum members required for the quorum of the Lok Sabha are.....
(1/10/ 1/3)
- Country's largest appellate court is..... (High Court/Supreme Court)
- Number of High Courts in India are..... (25/30)

Write the true/false -

- Federal system is prevalent in India. True/False
- The term of the members of the Rajya Sabha is 5 Years. True/False
- The answers to starred questions are given in writing. True/False
- The Supreme Court is the protector of the fundamental rights of the people. True/False



Match the pair correctly-

- | | |
|--------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. Budget Session | A. between November and December |
| 2. Monsoon Session | B. between February and May |
| 3. Winter Session | C. President |
| 4. Joint Session | D. between July and September |

Very short answer questions-

1. What do you mean by unstarred question?
2. What is the term of Rajya Sabha?
3. What are the three main organs of government?
4. Where is the Supreme Court of India located?

Short Answer Questions

1. What is a legislature?
2. What is bill? Tell me how?
3. What are the qualifications required for the post of President?
4. Tell us about Article 360.
5. What do you mean by independence of judiciary?

Long Answer Questions-

1. What are the functions of Parliament? Describe them.
2. Executive is an important part of the government. How? Explain.
3. Write in detail about the jurisdiction and powers of the Supreme Court.

Project Work-

1. Collect information about the procedure for election of Lok Sabha member.

Chapter - 15

Local Government

In this chapter- Need of local government, Development of local governance in modern India, 73rd Constitutional Amendment, Gram Panchayat, Panchayat Samiti, District Council, State Election Commission, 74th Constitutional Amendment, Municipality, City Council, Municipal Corporation, 73rd and 74th Amendment Implementation of.

The tradition of local governance in India has been there since ancient times. Even at that time, local government was divided into rural and urban areas. In the scriptures, the words Gramni, Gramadhipati, Reddy, Panchyatan etc. are mentioned. In atharvaveda, gramni is said to be state-made. He used to participate in the election of the king due to being the village chief. For example, these kings are ये राजानो राजकृतः सूता ग्रामण्यश्च। (3.5.7) similarly, in Yajurveda, Gramni is mentioned as senapati सेनानी ग्रामण्यौ। (15.15.19) Kautilya's Arthashastra, Manusmriti etc. also describe local governance. Local government means that all the reins of governance are with the local people, that is, the local people run the entire government.

Need for Local Government- There is direct participation of the public in local government. It is the closest system of governance to the common man. In local governance, the head is someone among the local people. He does people's work easily and with Immediate effect because he has a spiritual connection with his people. In addition, the participation of every person in the society in local governance is ensured. In order to bring women and backward classes into the mainstream, a provision has been made for reservation in local self-government. Local self-government creates a sense of planning and better management of resources among the people, it is also called the first school of healthy politics.

Development of Local Government in Modern India- In 1882 AD, a

Table 15.1	
Name Of Committee	Formation Year
Balwant Rai Mehta Committee	1957 AD
Harishchandra Mathur Committee	1963 AD
Ashok Mehta Committee	1977 AD
Singhvi Committee	1987 AD
P.K. Thungan Committee	1988 AD

proposal was brought by the then Governor General Lord Ripon to develop local governance institutions, that is why Lord Ripon is called the 'Father of Local Governance' in modern India. The 'Government of India Act 1919' gave local governance to the territory of provincial governments. In the Seventh Schedule of the Constitution, local governance was made the subject of the State List. Mahatma Gandhi had envisioned 'Gram Swarajya'. According to him, the best way to decentralize power is to strengthen the gram panchayats. The participation of local people should be in every area of



development. Local governance did not get enough importance in the Constitution because due to the partition of the country, the inclination of the Constitution was to strengthen the center. When the period of turmoil ended in the country and stability came, after that many important amendments were made from time to time in the Constitution to strengthen local governance. Several committees have been formed from time to time to establish, and strengthen the local government (Panchayati Raj) and to participate in it, and to divide rights and powers etc.

73rd Constitutional Amendment (1992 AD)- with the aim of strengthening local rural governance, the Government of India made the 73rd Amendment to the Constitution. By this, a new Part 9(A) has been added to the Constitution, which mentions Panchayati Raj from Articles 243(a) to 243(n). Panchayati Raj has been given constitutional status by it. This amendment was passed by the Indian Parliament on April 24, 1993. Through this amendment, the Panchayati Raj was given a three-tier structure, according to which there is a village panchayat at the bottom, panchayat committee at the middle level and zila parishad at the highest level. They are known by different names in different states. There is a provision for reservation in seats for Scheduled Castes, Scheduled Tribes, Other Backward Classes and Women at all levels. The State Finance Commission recommends grants from the Consolidated Fund to the Panchayati Raj Institutions.

Know this also-

- The Balwant Rai Mehta Committee recommended a three-tier Panchayati Raj system. Panchayati Raj system in India was started on October 2, 1959 from Bagdarigaon in Nagaur district of Rajasthan.

Gram Panchayat- Gram Panchayat occupies the last place in the three-tier structure of rural local government. The Gram Panchayat organizes gram sabhas from time to time, in which all the residents of the Panchayat area participate. The head of the village panchayat is called sarpanch, who is elected by the registered voters of the village panchayat. Its tenure is 5 Years. For the post of Sarpanch, the age of the candidate must be 21 Years.

Panchayat Samiti- This is the middle level of rural local government. Its head is called pradhan or area head, who is indirectly elected by the people. Whose tenure is 5 Years The age of the candidate for this post is 21 Years.

Zilla Parishad- This is the highest level of rural local governance. Its head is called the district head who is indirectly elected by the people. Whose tenure is also 5 Years For the post of district head, the age of the candidate must be 21 Years.

Transfer of subjects- In the 11th Schedule of the Constitution, 29 subjects have been given to the panchayati raj institutions, but the actual transfer is the power of the state government to decide how many subjects it transfers to the local Government. All these topics are related to the needs of local development and welfare.



State Election Commission- It is the responsibility of the State Election Commission to conduct elections in local government institutions. The State Election Commissioner is headed by the State Election Commissioner.

74th Constitutional Amendment (1992 AD)- The 74th Constitutional Amendment was enacted on 1 June 1993. It is related to urban local government. Urban local bodies have been given constitutional status by this constitutional amendment. It also has a three-tier structure, consisting of municipality, municipal council and Municipal Corporation. In urban local government, there is a system of reservation in seats for Scheduled Castes, Scheduled Tribes, Other Backward Classes and Women.

Municipality- Municipality is formed in areas with a population of 20 thousand to 1 lakh. Its head is called the chairman or chairman, who is indirectly elected by the people. Whose tenure is 5 Years The age of the candidate for this post is 21 Years.

City Council- The city council is formed in areas with a population of 1 lakh to 5 lakh. Its head is called the Chairman, who is indirectly elected by the people. Whose tenure is 5 Years The age of the candidate for this post is 21 Years.

Municipal Corporation- Municipal Corporation is formed in areas with a population of more than 5 lakh. The head of the municipal corporation is called the mayor or mayor, who is indirectly elected by the public. Whose tenure is 5 Years The age of the candidate for this post is 21 Years.

Population is the basis for the formation of the above institutions. All provisions in urban bodies such as elections, reservation, transfer of subjects, territorial election commissioners, etc. are applicable in the same way as in the 73rd Amendment.

Implementation of 73rd and 74th Amendments- The provisions of 73rd and 74th Amendments have been implemented in all states. At present, there are 2, 50,000 Village Panchayats, 6,000 Panchayat Samitis (Nagar Panchayats) 780 Zila Parishads across India in rural local government. At present, there are 1400 municipalities, 2,000 municipal councils and about 100 municipal corporations all over India under local government. Thus, it can be said that these institutions have an important contribution to the participation of local people and local development.

Question

Multiple Choice Questions-

1. Tenure of Municipal Corporation is-
A. 5 Years B. 9 Years C. 6 Years D. 7 Years
2. The 73rd and 74th constitutional amendments were enacted in-
A. 1991 B. 1992 C. 1993 D. 1994
3. The Balwant Rai Mehta Committee was formed in-
A. 1991 B. 1992 C. 1957 D. 1994



Fill in the blanks-

1. The Father of Local Government in India is.....
(Lord Ripon/Lord Dalhousie)
2. Committee recommended for a three tier system in Panchayati Raj.
(Singhvi Committee/ Balwantraoi Mehta Committee)
3. Conducts election for Local governments.
(Central Election Commission/State Election Commission)
4. Articles of the Consitution mention about the Panchayati Raj.
(243(a) to 243 (n)/240 to 241)

Write the true/false-

1. The head of the village panchayat is called pradhan. True/False
2. The 73rd Amendment deals with rural local government. True/False
3. 21 subjects were transferred to the Panchayati Raj Institutions True/False
4. In Vedic literature, the head of the village is called Gramni. True/False

Match the pair correctly-

- | | |
|--------------------------|------------------|
| 1. Village Panchayat | A. Mayor |
| 2. Panchayat Samiti | B. Sarpanch |
| 3. Zilla Parishad | C. Area Head |
| 4. Municipal Corporation | D. District Head |

Very short answer question-

1. What do you mean by local government?
2. What are the 3 levels of local governance at the village level?
3. Who is known as the father of modern local governance in India?
4. Who is the head of the Municipal Corporation?
5. Which committee suggested a three-tier structure of local governance?

Short Answer Questions-

1. What are the 3 levels of local governance at the urban level?
2. Explain the local governance in ancient India.
3. Give a brief introduction to the Zilla Parishad.

Long Answer Questions-

1. Explain the 73rd Amendment of the Constitution.
2. Explain the evolution of local governance in modern India.

Project Work-

1. Explain local governance with diagrams.



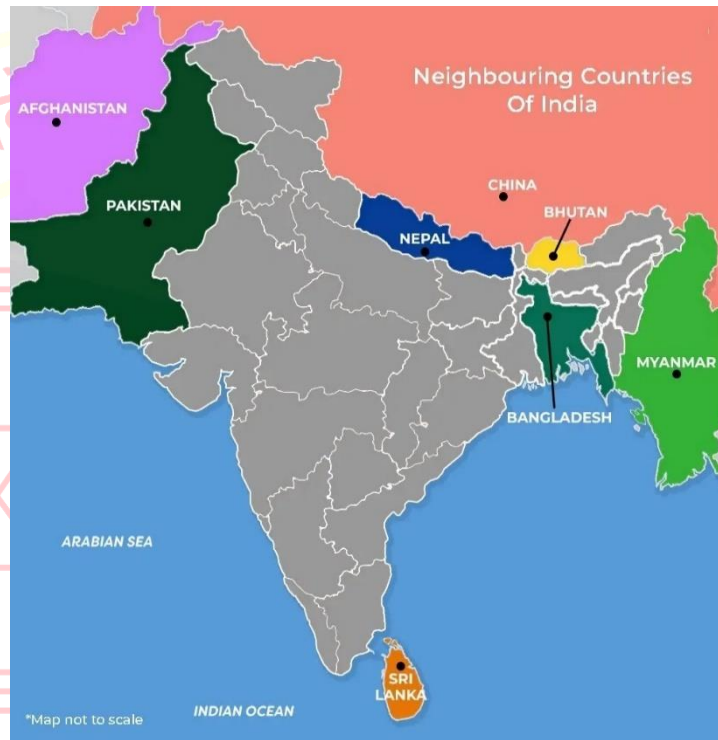
Chapter-16

Neighbouring countries of India

In this chapter- India and neighbouring countries, India-China relations, India-Pakistan relations, India-Nepal relations, India-Bhutan relations, India-Myanmar relations, India-Sri Lanka relations, India-Bangladesh relations, India-Afghanistan relations.

Today, India is the world's largest democratic and the world's fifth largest economy. Since ancient times, India's trade, cultural and religious relations have been with the whole world.

The nature of India has been changing with time, but India's friendly relations with the countries of the world have remained. The main reason for this is that India has never been strategically aggressive. In our Vedic literature, the spirit of world peace and well-being has been seen in many places. In Shrimad Bhagavad Gita, the noble feeling towards living beings is expressed as follows: समं सर्वेषु भूतेषु तिष्ठन्तं परमेश्वरम् । विनश्यत्स्वविनश्यन्तं यः पश्यति स पश्यति ॥ (13.27) that is, the man who sees God in all



Map 16.1 Neighboring countries of India

beings as perishable and consistent, sees it right. अयं निजः परा वेति गणना लघु चेतसाम् । उदार चरितानां तु वसुधैव कुटुम्बकम् ॥ (महोपनिषद् 4.71) That is, it is mine, it is alien. Such thoughts are of people with narrow minds. People with generous hearts consider the whole world as their family. It is clear from this thinking that the Indian people have a sense of generosity, equality, freedom, friendship, etc. towards the people of the world, which is the basis of India's foreign policy. The phrase 'Vasudhaiva Kutumbakam' is inscribed on the entrance number 6 of our Parliament. This stream of universal brotherhood, non-violence and peace has flowed from time to time in the thoughts of thinkers like Mahavir Swami, Gautam Buddha, Adi Shankaracharya, Kabir, Nanak dev, Mahatma Gandhi. These principles occupy a special place in Indian foreign policy. On the basis of which India has established relations with its neighboring countries and other countries of the world.

India and neighbouring countries- India is a sub-continent region in physical terms. 17 states of India share borders with 8 countries. India is bordered by China, Nepal, Bhutan to the north, Sri Lanka to the south, Bangladesh and Myanmar to the east, and Pakistan and Afghanistan to the west. Through the following table, we will understand the neighboring countries of India, the total border of India with them and the states that border them-

Barring a few countries (especially Pakistan and China), India has good relations with its neighbours. Let us know the relations of India with neighbouring countries-

Table 16.1			
Sr No	Country	Total range (of India)	border states
1	China	3488 kms.	Jammu and Kashmir, Himachal Pradesh, Uttarakhand, Sikkim, Arunachal Pradesh
2	Nepal	1751 kms.	Bihar, Uttarakhand, Uttar Pradesh, West Bengal, Sikkim
3	Bhutan	699 kms.	Assam, West Bengal, Arunachal Pradesh, Sikkim
4	Bangladesh	4096 kms.	West Bengal, Assam, Meghalaya, Tripura, Mizoram
5	Myanmar (Burma)	(Maximum range)	Arunachal Pradesh, Nagaland, Manipur, Mizoram
6	Pakistan	1643 kms.	Jammu Kashmir, Rajasthan, Gujarat, Punjab
7	Afghanistan	3323 kms.	Jammu and Kashmir

India-China Relations- China is a major neighboring country of India. India-China relations have been cultural and trade since ancient times. When China was liberated from foreign hegemony (1949 AD), India was the first to recognize the Communist Government of China and play an important role in getting permanent membership in the United Nations. In 1954, the Panchsheel Agreement was signed between the two countries and in 1955 AD. In the Bandung (Indonesia) Conference in 1920, both countries gave the slogan of Hindi-Chinese, brother-brother, fully cooperating with each other.

Due to India's large population, power and richness of natural resources, China considers India as its main rival from the beginning. Due to China's expansionist and monopolistic policy over Asia, the period between 1957 and 1978 AD in India-China relations has been confrontational and tension. China has been indirectly having a hostile attitude towards India. The result of which was manifested in the China-Tibet dispute and the India-China border dispute. The 1958 Tibet uprising under the Sino-Tibetan dispute was led by spiritual

leader the Dalai Lama, and China soon suppressed the rebellion. For this reason, on March 10, 1959, the Dalai Lama had to take refuge in India.

In 1950-51 AD, China had described a large part of India as its part in its Map. When the Indian government protested, China avoided the matter by calling it an old map of the Komintang government. After the Panchsheel Agreement, India had accepted all its disputes with China, but China gradually started establishing its military power considering the Indian border areas as its territory. When India opposed it, China, in a letter to India on January 23, 1959, accusing India, said that the boundaries between India and China were never determined. This is the result of India's imperialist conspiracy against China. As a result, In October 1962, China invaded India. In this war, the Indian forces showed indomitable courage and responded to the Chinese invasion, but India was defeated at the military level. China took control of a large part of India in this war. After this war, India severed all its relations with China. After a long standoff, in 1978, India started receiving diplomatic signals from China that it was willing to improve relations with India. In this episode, on the call of the Chinese government, the then Foreign Minister Atal Bihari Vajpayee visited China, but due to China's invasion of Vietnam, this visit was incomplete. But after this, both countries have made meaningful efforts to normalize their relations and promote trade, understanding each other's importance. In this context, China and India have held peace talks and agreements/agreements several times. But the treacherous China does not desist from its habits and also China asserts its right over some areas of Sikkim, Arunachal Pradesh, Jammu and Kashmir, and Ladakh. An immediate example of which, on June 15, 2020, China tried to infiltrate the Galvan Valley (the area between Ladakh and Aksai Chin) in which 20 of our soldiers were martyred.

Know this also-

- On December 9, 2022, there was a skirmish between the Indo-China borders in the Tawang sector of Arunachal Pradesh, in which the Chinese army suffered heavy losses.

In conclusion, it can be said that except for the border dispute between India and China, relations have strengthened in economic, technical, cultural, etc. areas. At present, China understands India's strength and progress on the world stage very well. Therefore, Chinese President Xi Jinping visited India in September 2014 to strengthen relations with India. After this, the Prime Minister of India, Shri Narendra Modi also visited China in May, 2015. If the border dispute between India and China is resolved, far-reaching consequences will be seen in global politics.

India-Pakistan relations- Pakistan is the closest neighbor of India in the north-west. Before 1947, there was no nation named Pakistan, but due to the two-nation ideology, India had to accept partition and a new nation named Pakistan emerged. After the end of British colonialism in India, due to the Indo-Pak



partition, a new conflict era started, which led to the disappearance of peace from the region. This conflict is also known as the India-Pakistan conflict.

The main reasons for the India-Pakistan conflict have been the problems



Figure 16.2- Tashkent Agreement

arising out of partition, the Kashmir dispute, Pakistan's anti-India policy, etc. Pakistan in 1965, 1971 AD and 1999 AD. They attacked India. The Indian Army has defeated Pakistan in response to these attacks. Pakistan continues to carry out various types of diplomatic moves, border violations and terrorist activities against India, such as the terrorist attacks in Indian Parliament House on December 13, 2001, Taj Hotel in

Mumbai on November 26, 2008, Pulwama on February 14, 2019.

India has been in favour of resolving all disputes, including Kashmir, peacefully from the beginning. In this sequence, the Indus Water Treaty between the two countries (1960 AD), 1966 AD. The Tashkent Agreement (Lal Bahadur Shastri and Ayub Khan) and the Shimla Agreement (Indira Gandhi and Zulfikar Ali Bhutto) in 1972, the Lahore Agreement (Atal Bihari Vajpayee and Nawaz Sharif) in 1999 AD. Under the Shimla Agreement, a train service was started between the two countries on July 22, 1976, under the name of Samjhauta Express, which is currently closed. In February 1999, the then Indian Prime Minister Shri Atal Bihari Vajpayee initiated friendship through the historic Lahore Bus Tour, but Pakistan again betrayed and invaded Kargil in India in May 1999 AD. India defeated Pakistan badly by running 'Operation Vijay'.

Know this also-

- To commemorate the Kargil victory, we celebrate Kargil Vijay Diwas every year on 26 July.

In conclusion, we can say that even today, the two countries look at each other with distrust. Pakistan should immediately stop terrorist activities operating from its country to gain India's confidence and reduce military expenditure. We should welcome every friendship offer made to Pakistan and help the two countries together in all possible development.

Indo-Nepal Relations- Nepal is the neighboring country of India. Nepal shares a high strategic importance for India as it borders

Know this also-

- A spokesperson of the Uttar Pradesh government said that on March 23, 1989, on the expiry of the transit and bilateral treaty, due to the anti-India protests in Nepal, 728 km. Out of 5500 Indian shopkeepers in 12 markets of Nepal on the long Nepal-Uttar Pradesh border, 4000 shopkeepers had closed their shops and came to India.

China in the north and is surrounded by India on all other sides. India and Nepal have also signed a Treaty of Peace and Friendship in 1950, under which the two countries will cooperate mutually in terms of security and maintain the relationship of friendship by establishing mutual dialogue in any confusing situation. India got Nepal membership of the United Nations in 1955 AD. Many times differences appear in Indo-Nepal relations. The main reasons for these differences are the anti-India protests in Nepal at the end of the Transit Treaty, Nepal's inclination towards communist China, the construction of the Lhasa-Kathmandu road, the demand for declaring a peace zone in the United Nations, anti-India activities operating in Nepal, etc.

In ancient times, Nepal was a part of India, which is confirmed by Janakpur, the kingdom of King Janak mentioned in the Adi Kavya Ramayana, which is currently in Nepal. Apart from this, many such examples will be found in history, which consider Nepal as a region of India. Since ancient times, India and Nepal have had a lot of cultural similarities, probably due to which there has never been any special dispute between the two. Citizens of both countries can come and go to each other's country without a visa-passport. Due to the above similarities, today a large number of students and citizens of Nepal are doing other work including studying and teaching in schools, Ved pathshalas, colleges, universities of India.

In conclusion, we can conclude that Nepal wants to have relations with India and China on the basis of the sea principle to keep China happy. Nepal has great strategic and cultural importance for India, so India wants a special kind of relationship with Nepal. India has always assisted Nepal in its development projects by giving it the status of a younger brother.

India-Bhutan relations- Bhutan, India is not only a neighbor and friendly country, but they also have relations in terms of history, culture and spiritual traditions. In August 1949, a treaty of friendship was signed between the two countries, under which the two countries would not interfere in each other's internal issues to maintain peace mutually. According to Clause 2 of this Treaty, India shall play the role of a guide in Bhutan's foreign affairs and Bhutan shall heed India's advice. Bhutan's defence will be the responsibility of India. India has continuously supported Bhutan's economic development including agriculture, irrigation, road projects. Bhutan's Chukkh Hydropower Project, Pendena Cement Factory, Capital Development, Renovation of Old Monasteries and Temples etc. have been done in collaboration with the Government of India, which has accelerated the

Know this also-

- Clarifying the strategic importance of Nepal in the Indian Parliament, on March 17, 1950, Prime Minister Jawaharlal Nehru said that any possible attack on Nepal is definitely a threat to India's security.

Know this also-

- In June 2014, Prime Minister Narendra Modi chose Bhutan for his first foreign visit.



development of the Bhutanese economy. Today, Bhutan is also exporting electricity to India. India is Bhutan's largest trading partner.

In India-Bhutan relations, differences sometimes arise over the interpretation of Section 2 of the Friendship Treaty of 1949. In addition, many times Chinese shepherds also encroach on Bhutan's borders on the pretext of grazing sheep, which is a matter of concern for India. China, The US, Russia and other European countries have been eager to take advantage of Bhutan's strategic location, so Bhutan is an important country for India.

Indo-Myanmar Relations- Historically, culturally and religiously, the relations between India and Myanmar (Burma) are close. India has established strong and commercial ties with Myanmar. After the establishment of democracy in 2010 AD, a period of prosperity has started in India-Myanmar relations. The governments of the two countries are cooperating with each other on issues such as agriculture, information and technology, telecommunications, steel, oil, natural gas, food items etc.

Know this also-

- Myanmar's pro-democracy leader and Nobel laureate Aung San Suu Kyi had said that I consider myself partly Indian.

India-Sri Lanka Relations- Sri Lanka is a small country located in the Indian Ocean, which is located in the south of India. The Pakistan Strait determines the international boundary line between the two countries. Since ancient times, Sri Lanka and India have had religious, cultural, friendly and spiritual relations. In modern politics, relations between the two countries have been affected by Indian intervention during the civil war in Sri Lanka. The Tamil community there looked at India with suspicion and due to this, the LTTE, an organization active in Sri Lanka, had caused a big blow to India, which led to a vacuum in the relationship between the two. Relations between the two countries have changed in the last few decades. Today, bilateral relations have strengthened in the fields of trade, investment, defense etc. along with political relations.

India-Bangladesh relations- Bangladesh, located in the east of India, was known as East Pakistan. But due to the dictatorial attitude of the Pakistani government, the then East Pakistan had to suffer from repression. India had to

Know this also-

- In June 1999, India started the Kolkata-Dhaka bus service for Bangladesh.
- In March 2021 AD, the Prime Minister of India, Shri Narendra Modi, during his visit to Bangladesh, offered prayers at Jeshoreshwari Shaktipeeth and the famous temple of Matua community, Orakandi Temple.

make military interventions due to a large number of Bangladeshis taking refuge in India. After the then Prime Minister Smt. Indira Gandhi and international intervention, Bangladesh was recognized as an independent nation on December 6, 1971 AD. At present, there is a friendly relationship between the two countries, but there is a situation of



dispute on some issues, such as the Ganga and Teesta river water dispute, the Three Bigha Corridor, the New York Island Chakma refugee problem, illegal migration of Bangladeshi minorities to India, etc.

Some of the above problems of India-Bangladesh such as Farakka Agreement on Ganga Water Sharing (1977 AD) and Ganga Water Treaty (1996 AD) Three-bigha corridor agreement (2011 AD) It has become etched. India has always helped its neighboring countries in every possible way, Bangladesh is also an example of this. India's contribution to the independence

of Bangladesh cannot be forgotten, but today they seem to be distant neighbours.

Indo-Afghan relations- In ancient times, Afghanistan was part of India. Today,

Know this also-

- In the year 2021 AD, the Taliban has taken over Afghanistan by ousting the President of Afghanistan, Asraf Ghani.

Table 16.2	
country name	border line name
India-China	McMahon, Line of Actual Control
India-Pakistan	Radcliffe, LC
Afghanistan	durand line

India also has mixed relations with Afghanistan. Taliban militants are active in Afghanistan, which also affects India. India is currently the largest regional investor in Afghanistan and is most committed to its reconstruction. A large number of Indian workers

and some sections of the Indian Army are assisting in the construction of roads, railways, hospitals, schools, etc. in Afghanistan on a large scale. India's peace efforts in Afghanistan have also been appreciated by the United Nations.

Question

Multiple Choice Questions-

1. Aym Nij: Para Veti Calculation Short Chetasam. Generous charitanaM tu Vasudhaiva kutumbakam from which book is it taken-
A. Ramayana B. Mahabharata
C. Mahopnishad D. Hitopadesh
2. The number of neighboring countries of India are-
A. 8 B. 10 C. 6 D. 15
3. Panchsheel Agreement was signed between-
A. India-China between B. India-Bangladesh
C. Between India and Pakistan D. between Pakistan and China
4. India-Pakistan border is extended to-
A. 3214 km. B. 2933 km. C. 3323 km. D. 2938 km.

Fill in the blanks-

1. Highest border of India. Seems to be. (Bangladesh/China)
2. Ancient name of India is..... (Aryavarta/Sapta Sandhav)
3. Tashkent Aggrement was signed between.....



(India-Pakistan/India-Sri Lanka)

4. India started the Bus Service for Bangladesh in.....
(June 1999 AD/AD) December 1999 AD)

Write the true/ false-

1. Kargil Vijay Diwas is celebrated on July 26. True/False
2. The old name of Myanmar is Burma. True/False
3. Samjhauta Express used to operate between India and Pakistan. True/False
4. Prime Minister Shri Narendra Modi visited Bangladesh in March 2021. True/False

Match the pair correctly -

- | | |
|----------|--------------------------|
| 1. North | A. Pakistan, Afghanistan |
| 2. South | B. China, Nepal, Bhutan |
| 3. East | C. Bangladesh, Myanmar |
| 4. West | D. Sri Lanka |

Very short answer questions-

1. What are the bases of Indian foreign policy?
2. Which countries are included in the Indian sub-continent?
3. On the basis of which principle was the partition of India and Pakistan taken Place?
4. Which states of India share border with China?
5. When was the Friendship Treaty between India and Bhutan signed?

Short Answer Questions

1. Which are the neighboring countries of India?
2. Write 3 reasons for the border dispute between India and Bangladesh.
3. Write a note on India-Nepal relations.
4. Give a brief introduction to India-Sri Lanka relations.

Long Answer Questions

1. Explain India-Pakistan relations in detail.
2. Tell about the geographical location and size of India.
3. Highlight India-China relations.

Project Work

1. List the names of the capitals of our neighboring countries and their currencies.



Ved Vibhushan

1st Year

Economic



Chapter-17

Indian Economy

In this chapter- Economy of ancient India, low level economic development under colonial rule, Indian economy (1950-1990AD), liberalization, privatization, globalization.

Economy of Ancient India- The Indian economy had been very strong in ancient times. In our Vedas, the basis of economic thinking is live and let live. That is, there has been enough thought in our culture to live with equal rights for every living being in this universe. The meaning of economy in the Vedas has been viewed in great detail with great depth. Many thinkers who do not study Vedic literature believe that there was no traditional meaning-for economy and its thinking in Indian thoughts. We find an indication of the sources of Indian economics in the Vedas. Vedic literature mentions wealth, abundance of wealth and various types of wealth and the acquisition and use of it. In the first mantra of Ishavasyopanishad, it is mentioned- ईशावास्यमिदं सर्वं यत्किंच जगत्यां जगत् । तेन त्यक्तेन भुञ्जीथा मा गृधः कस्यस्विद्धनम् ॥

According to the spirit of this mantra, do not be renounce, do not be greedy, this whole natural wealth is not yours, it is the abode of The Supreme Soul. Therefore, this wealth belongs to everyone. In the early days of civilization, Vedic thoughts prohibited the uninterrupted use and monopoly of money. Now the question arises that even after such a strong system and thinking, why are we so weak in today's context? But that is not the case. The first use of mudra was done on this land of India, hiranyapind is mentioned in the Vedas. Hiranya i.e. gold pind i.e. currency, at that time our ancestors used to convert gold into fixed weight and also transact with it. In the Vedas, we find many examples of monetary exchange system. Later, the names of gold coins are found in the mahabhashyas of Panini and Patanjali. It is clear from this that since ancient times, our country has a very developed system of production, distribution, consumption and dividend of goods. Small scale industries were the backbone of the economic system of that period. Every section of the society had been engaged in manufacturing and distribution through this small scale industry. We used to nurture natural resources keeping in mind our social needs, not exploitation. But over time, foreign invaders destroyed our small scale industries and led our economy to collapse.

Know this also-

- According to historian Angus Maddison, India was the richest country in the world and had the largest economy in the world until the 17th century.

The core of the present Indian economy has been founded by the British rule. England considered colonial India as a raw material supplier and a ladder of



development. Here we will study the Indian economy at the time of independence and after independence and liberalization, privatization and globalization etc.

Low level of economic development under colonial rule- Agriculture has been the mainstay of the Indian economy since ancient times. Apart from this, cotton and silk textile industry and metal based industries were also helpful in strengthening the economy. The policies of the British government in the colonial period had changed the basic nature of the Indian economy. The British had never faithfully estimated India's national income and per capita income. Some Indian economists made assessments at their own level, including Dadabhai Naoroji, Dr. V.K.R.V. Rao, R.C. Desai, Findlay Siraj, etc.

Agriculture Sector- In the colonial period, India remained basically an agricultural economy. At that time, 85% of India's population was directly and indirectly engaged in the agricultural sector. Even after this, agricultural productivity continued to decline progressively. The main reason behind this was the geosystem systems. Due to the zamindari system (Eastern India / Bengal Presidency), all the profits were grabbed by the landlords. Low technology, lack of irrigation facilities, negligible use of fertilizers had led to a decline in agricultural productivity. Farmers were made to produce cash crops (cotton, silk, jute, indigo, sugarcane etc.) in place of food grain crops. Cotton and indigo were sent to factories in England as raw materials. The British government used to buy raw materials from the farmers at a very low price and sell the finished goods at high prices in the Indian markets. This was also a method of exploitation of Indian farmers by the British government.

Industrial Sector- At the end of the 19th century, cotton textile and jute industries were established in India. The jute industry was the product of foreigners. Cotton textile industry was confined to Maharashtra and Gujarat and jute industry was confined to Bengal. In the 20th century, the iron and steel industry started developing in India. The Tata Iron Steel Company (TISCO) was founded in Jamshedpur (Tata Nagar) by Jamshed Nausharwan Ji Tata in 1907 AD. Earlier, India did not have a strong industrial base in the colonial system. Famous craftsmen were declining. The British did not want to set up industries here because it would have caused the industries there (England) to lose their identity, their market would be destroyed, competition would be created, etc.

Foreign Trade- India has had trade relations with foreign countries since ancient times, but due to the wrong policies of the colonial government, India's foreign trade was greatly narrowed. This trade was restricted to India-England (50%). With the construction of the Suez Canal (1859-1869 AD), England took great control of India's trade. India's foreign trade was now only nurturing England's industrial revolution.

Know this also-

- The Suez Canal was built by Ferdinand de Lesseps. This canal connects the Mediterranean Sea with the Red Sea.



Demographic Situation- The first census in India was conducted in 1872 AD and the first complete census was done in 1881AD. After this, the census continued every 10 Years. At that time the population was very low and the growth rate was not so much. The literacy rate was also very low. There was a complete lack of public health services. There was an outbreak of infectious diseases spread by water and air.

Know this also-

- The infant mortality rate in British India was 218/1000. Presently the infant mortality rate in India is 30/1000 (2019 AD).
- According to the World Health Organization 2020 data, life expectancy in India is 70.8 years and India ranks 117th in the world ranking. While the life expectancy in British India was 44 years.

Business Structure- Agriculture was the largest occupation in British India. 70-75% of the country's population was engaged in agriculture, 10% in the manufacturing sector and 15-20% of the population was engaged in the service sector. During this period, regional inequality was high and the services and manufacturing sectors began to grow.

Infrastructure- The development of infrastructure in British India was not aimed at providing facilities to the Indian masses. The British government decided to serve its interests and strengthen the economy in major sectors such as rail, roads, ports, dams, electricity, schools and colleges, oil and gas pipelines, sanitation, drinking water, health system, banks, insurance, postal, etc. Money system etc. were developed.

Know this also-

- There are three types of economies in vogue in the world– capitalist, socialist and mixed economy.

Indian Economy (1950-1990 AD)- After 200 Years of British colonial rule,

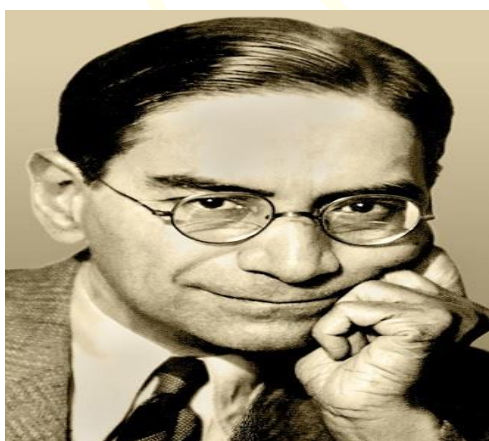


Figure-17.1 Prashant Chandra

India became independent on August 15, 1947 AD. The main objective of the economic system of government in independent India was the welfare of the people. At that time, the then Prime Minister Pt. Nehru liked the model of socialism the best, but India, committed to democracy, did not fully agree with the Soviet socialist idea. Therefore, India will be a socialist country, in which democracy and private property will also have a place along with a strong public sector. This economic system is called a mixed economy.

Planning Commission- The explanation of how the resources of a country should be used is called planning. The objectives of a plan have to be

accomplished within a specific time period. In India, the plans were for a period of 5 years, which were called five-year plans. In India, Planning Commission was formed in 1950 AD, whose ex-officio chairman is the Prime Minister.

Objectives of the Five Year Plan- The objectives of the Five Year Plans are often different. The Government has to determine the objectives in each scheme. Some of the commonly accepted objectives are-

1. **Growth** means increasing the production capacity of goods and services in the country. From the point of view of economics, the indicator of growth is the continuous increase in gross domestic product (GDP).
2. **Modernization** Producers have to adopt new technology to increase the production of goods and services. They also aim to increase production through new technologies and machines in agriculture and industries.
3. **Self-reliance** Self-reliance means depending on oneself. The first seven five-year plans included reducing dependence on imported food grains, foreign technology and capital.
4. **Equality** Equality is necessary along with growth, modernization and self-reliance for the economic development of a country. It is through the principle of equality that the benefits of economic growth reach the citizens at the last rung of the country.

Know this also-

- From January 1, 2015, the name of the Planning Commission has been changed to NITI Aayog. Prashant Chandra Mahalanobis has an important contribution in the making of the Five Year Plan.

Agriculture- The efforts made by the Five Year Plans to improve the agriculture sector in independent India are as follows:

1. **Land Reforms-** At the time of independence, most of the land of the country was concentrated with landlords and vassals. After independence, zamindari and vassal system were abolished, changes were made in the ownership of holdings, development of new techniques in agriculture, etc.
2. **Green Revolution-** Green Revolution was started in the country for higher yields in agriculture. The first phase of the Green Revolution was from 1965 to 1975 and the second phase was from 1975 to 1985. Under this, the use of improved varieties of seeds and chemical fertilizers was emphasized. As a result, India became self-sufficient in foodgrains. The Green Revolution led to a huge increase in the production of wheat and rice.

Know this also-

- Father of Green Revolution in India M.S. Swaminathan is considered. The part of production sold by farmers in the market is called marketable surplus.

Know this also-

- GDP is a broad measure of a nation's overall economic activity.



3. **Agricultural Grants-** In order to make the agriculture sector self-reliant, the government had launched the scheme of agricultural subsidy to facilitate the development and access of new technological and advanced seeds (HYVs) to the farmers. But at present, the policy makers believe that most of the Indian farmers have become self-sufficient in the agriculture sector, so now there is a need to restructure this scheme.

Know this also-

- The seeds were called High Yielding Varieties (HYV).

Industry and Trade- In the Five Year Plans, there was a lot of emphasis on

Know this also-

- The unit making maximum investment up to Rs Five lakh rupees in 1950 AD. At present its limit is one crore.

the expansion of industries. At the time of independence, there were very few industries in India and most of them were cotton textiles and jute industries. In the Third Five Year Plan, it was decided that the Government would exercise complete

control over large and heavy industries. The private sector will act as a supplement to the public sector. The government had formulated an industrial policy in 1956 for the development of industries. According to this policy, industries were classified into three categories- public ownership, private and public owned, private owned industries. The licensing system was developed by the Government to control the private sector industries. The government established the Village and Small Industries Committee (Curve Committee) in 1955 to increase village development. A variety of facilities were provided by the government for the development of small scale industries.

Trade Policy, Import Substitution- Indian Industrial Policy was closely related to trade. In the first seven five-year plans, trade was characterized by a policy of inward trade. Technically this policy is called import substitution. Its purpose was to develop domestic production in exchange for imports, maximize supply of goods and provide protection to Indian industries from foreign competition. At that time, import protection was divided into tariff and quota category.

Know this also-

- The tax imposed on imported goods is called tariff. The specified quantity of imported goods is called quota.

In 1950-51, the GDP of the industrial sector was 13%, which increased to 24.6 % in 1990-91. In the 1980s, the LPG model (Liberalization, Privatization, and Globalization) was introduced to improve the economy. The objective of this model was to develop the Indian economy at par with the major economies of the world (America, Russia, China, France, and England). In order to strengthen the economy, the Government of India implemented many policies. Its three sub-classes are liberalization, privatization and globalization.

Liberalization- Liberalization is the removal or relaxation of unnecessary restrictions imposed in the industry and trade sector by the government. No economy is truly completely free from restrictions. The real beginning of



liberalization in India was on July 24, 1991. The LPG model facilitates the process of integration in the economy through liberalization and privatization. According to the policy of liberalization in India, the quota, licensing system was gradually abolished. The Government is making continuous efforts to eliminate the bottlenecks in the way of production with utmost sincerity. The new economic policy, issued on July 24, 1991, has four major components - liberalization, privatization, globalization and marketization. Liberalization in India had two parts - domestic and external liberalization.

1. **Domestic Liberalization-** Domestic liberalization gave banks the right to fix interest rates, and companies to sell their shares in the market. These domestic reforms had a positive impact on the Indian economy.
2. **External Liberalization-** The main objective of external liberalization is to attract foreign investment. Under this, the currency exchange rate was left to the market. Along with the meaningful impact of external liberalization, there were negative effects in some areas, such as the import of palm oil led to a fall in the prices of mustard and groundnut and our farmers suffered losses, the handloom industry was often wiped out due to open import of textiles.

Objectives of liberalization-

1. Bring stability to the economy without delay.
2. To change economic policies to speed up the growth process of the economy.
3. To improve and modernize the functioning of the financial sector.
4. Industry and trade had to be freed from strict control.
5. The lives of the people of the country had to be made happy.

Factors encouraging liberalization in India-

1. The government abolished the licensing system from all industries except alcohol, cigarettes, hazardous chemicals, industrial explosives, electronics, aviation and pharmaceuticals. Due to this, the entry of entrepreneurs in the industrial sector became easier.
2. Only the items mentioned in the earlier license were required to be produced. Now the producers have got exemption in product selection.
3. The investment limit of small scale industries was increased so that they could take a modern form by bringing necessary improvements in production technology.

Positive effects of liberalization- The positive effects of liberalization included annual growth rate and rapid growth in industrial production. Foreign exchange earnings and investment increased. India's fiscal deficit narrowed and the market expanded, making customers have options.

Negative effects of liberalization- According to the basic principle of liberalization, there is no healthy competition among the producers. Low-capital industries and institutions could not stand in front of large-capital multinational or domestic companies. Agricultural losses are being traded, rural craft industries



have been destroyed, poverty remains the biggest challenge in India, and employment situation remains severe.

Privatization- Privatization means transfer of ownership and control of public industrial units to the private sector. Public companies can convert into private sector in two ways-
1. **By giving up the ownership and management of a public undertaking**
2. **By selling the public undertaking.** Selling a public enterprise to the general public through equity is called ‘disinvestment’.

Know this also-

- Maharatna- Indian Oil Corporation Limited (IOCL) and Steel Authority of India (SAIL)
- Navratnas- Hindustan Aeronautics Limited (HAL) and Mahanagar Telephone Nigam Limited (MTNL)
- Laghuratna- Bharat Sanchar Nigam Limited (BSNL) and Airport Authority of India (AAI)

The government has selected these institutions as Maharatna, Navratna and Laghu Ratna undertakings to increase efficiency, management and competitiveness in public institutions. This scheme of the government is inspired by the Navratnas of Emperor Vikramaditya.

The following steps can be taken under privatization-

1. Allow the establishment of such industries in the private sector, which were so far established in the public sector.
2. The management and control of such public establishments which were being operated as Government Departments should be handed over to private entrepreneurs such as Railways, Posts etc.

Objectives of privatization-

1. Mobilize the necessary financial resources to meet the various needs of the economy.
2. To provide managerial qualifications and competencies.
3. Reduction of external debt.
4. Increase productivity and enhance operational efficiency.
5. To coordinate the production activities of the private sector with the public sector in line with national needs and priorities.

Factors that encourage privatization in India-

1. New economic reform programmes.
2. To make Indian industries competitive.
3. Broad base for increasing production.

Positive effects of privatization-

1. As a result of privatization, the participation of small investors and employees in the shares of private companies will decentralize their power and management.
2. The elimination of public sector monopoly in many sectors such as telecom and petroleum will provide relief to consumers due to more options and cheaper and better quality products and services.



-
3. Investors will get simple exit options. This will help establish more precise rules for pricing and pricing and help private companies raise funds for their projects or their expansion.

Negative effects of privatization-

1. The biggest difficulty of the privatization process is the opposition from the workers by the unions. They are largely afraid of changes in management and work culture.
2. After privatization, the pure assets of companies cannot be used for public works and public welfare.
3. Privatization can encourage corporatization to benefit large industries, which will increase the possibility of money concentration.

Globalization- Globalization is such a continuous process through which the countries of the whole world are connected to each other economically, socially and culturally, it is also called landindustry. Globalization is not the latest theory, the concept of globalization has been prevalent for centuries. The tradition of globalization in India has been there since civilizational times. आ नो भद्राः क्रतवो यन्तु विश्वतो (ऋ.1.89.1) That is, welfare ideas should come from all around us. The resolve to make the world cultured is evident from this mantra. The concept of 'वसुधैव कुटुम्बकम्' also has a sense of global well-being. In modern India, Rabindranath Tagore has also spoken of world human beings. We have studied it extensively in Vedic literature in the previous class.

Characteristics of Globalization-

1. The economy of the country is integrated with the economy of the world i.e. economic activities are expanded beyond national boundaries.
2. The international markets relating to goods, services, capital, technology and labour are integrated, i.e., all restrictions on their movement are removed.
3. Multinational companies expand.

Factors affecting globalization in India-

1. Liberal Policies
2. Technological change
3. Competition.

Globalization of Indian Economy- In India too, the process of globalization is gradually gaining momentum. It started in India in 1991, when under the new economic policy, liberalization was done in the following areas:

1. Globalization of industry and investment under the New Industrial Policy.
2. Globalization of Finance under the New Investment Policy.

Globalization in India are some of the key indicators-

1. Multinational companies are being set up in India in large numbers.
2. Indian corporations are becoming active in the US debt market.
3. For the Indian economy, coastal taxes have been reduced and foreign direct investment and foreign technology have been simplified.
4. About 2000 Indian companies have been awarded ISO: 9000 certificates, which is a high quality guarantee.
5. Trade and export intensity has increased tremendously in the last few Years.



Know this also-

- Getting any service from abroad is called external procurement.

Positive Impact of Globalization in India- The increasing impact of globalization has led to increase in product varieties, increase in competitiveness, foreign exchange and foreign direct investment, development of infrastructure, growth in service sector etc. Due to globalization, today Indian companies are operating abroad, such as Oil and Natural Gas Corporation (ONGC) is operating its projects in sixteen countries, Tata Steel is selling its products in fifty countries. In addition, H.C.L. There are Dr. Reddy's Labs etc.

Negative effects of globalization in India- Due to the increase in globalization, today there has been an increase in the problems of exploitation of workers, decrease in the importance of agriculture, problems for small scale industries, trauma to the feeling of patriotism etc.

It is clear from this study that in colonial India, the British government had over-exploited the Indian economy for its own personal interests, which made the condition of India's industries miserable. After independence, the government had done remarkable work through five-year plans to improve the economy. In order to strengthen the economy, the emphasis was on liberalization, privatization and globalization under the new economic policy in 1991 AD. This resulted in a mixed impact on the Indian economy.

Question

Multiple Choice Questions-

1. Major centres of cotton textile industries were in-
A. Bengal-Bihar
B. Assam-Mizoram
C. Rajasthan - Madhya Pradesh
D. Maharashtra-Gujarat
2. The highest production in the crops through the Green Revolution was-
A. Maize and Bajra
B. Urad and Moong
C. Wheat and rice
D. Sesame and Soyabean
3. New Economic Policy in India was implemented on-
A. June 24, 1991
B. 24 July 1991
C. 24 August 1991
D. September 24, 1991
4. Till the 17th century, India was the world's largest economy and wealthiest Country has said-
A. Angus Madison
B. Laski
C. Yesterday Marks
D. one of these

Fill in the blanks-

1. The mainstay of the Indian economy is.....
(Agriculture/Animal Husbandry)
2. Self reliance means depending on.....
(Themselves/others)
3. Planning Commission is currently known as.....
(Service Commission/NITI Aayog)



-
4. Getting service from abroad is called.....
(External procurement/ internal acquisition)

Tell the truth/false-

1. The tax levied on imported goods is called tariff. True/False
2. Globalization is also called globalization. True/False
3. GDP is a comprehensive measure of the overall economic activities of a nation. True/False
4. The Suez Canal connects the Mediterranean Sea to the Red Sea. True/False

Perfect pair match-

- | | |
|---------------------|----------------------|
| 1. Five Year Plan | A. Swaminathan |
| 2. Green Revolution | B. Jamshed G Tata |
| 3. Tisco | C. 1980 AD. |
| 4. LPG Model | D. P. C. Mahalanobis |

Very short answer questions-

1. When and by whom was the first iron and steel industry established in India?
2. Who is the ex-officio Chairman of NITI Aayog?
3. What do you mean by Green Revolution?
4. What are the four main components of the new economic policy?
5. Name the two Navratna companies of India.

Short Answer Questions-

1. Explain the reasons for the decrease in agricultural productivity in colonial India.
2. Write a comment on the ancient Indian economy.
3. What do you understand by LPG model?
4. What do you understand by privatization?

Long Answer Questions-

1. What is globalization? How globalization affected the Indian economy.
2. Explain in detail the liberalization in India.

Project Work-

1. Make a comparative study of the ancient and modern economy of India.

Chapter-18

Poverty and Human capital

In this chapter- Poverty, Human Capital, Employment, Growth and Changing Employment Structure, Informalization of Indian Labor Force, Unemployment.

India is an agricultural country, with most of its population dependent on agriculture. There is an excess of educated unemployed in the country, who struggle excessively for employment. But they do not get enough employment. A large section of the population in the country is struggling with poverty. The State and Central Governments are running a variety of employment oriented programmes aimed at providing employment opportunities to remove unemployment, but all of them are very less in proportion to the population. All our five-year plans have been aimed at the upliftment of the poorest and most backward members of the society. Here we will study about poverty, human capital, employment and other issues.

Poverty- Generally poor are people who do not have the basic facilities of life. Waste pickers, hawkers, beggars, cobblers, etc. people who lead a life of deprivation are called poor. According to economists, poverty is identified on the basis of people's occupation and property ownership. According to him, the rural poor are often landless agricultural labourers or labourers and smallholder farmers.

Know this also-

- Dadabhai Naoroji had created $\frac{3}{4}$ formula to measure poverty.

Dadabhai Naoroji first considered the concept of poverty line before independence. After independence, many efforts were made to assess poverty in India, such as if a person's income is less than 60% of the national average income, then he is considered poor. Expert Groups were formed in 1962, 1989, and 2005. There are also many types of poor, such as completely poor, very poor, poor. Similarly, there are many types of non-poor - middle class, upper middle class, rich, very rich and fully wealthy.

Classification of poverty -

To define poverty, population can be divided into 2 parts - poor and non-poor. The poverty line separates these two classes.

1. **The common poor** - people who sometimes have some money, such as laborers.
2. **Sometimes poor** - People who are rich most of the time are also called short-term poor.
3. **Non-poor** - people who are never poor.

Poverty Line- There are many methods of measuring poverty, the main method of which is to determine the monetary value of minimum calorie consumption. According to this, rural people should get minimum consumption of 2400 calories



and urban people should get 2100 calories. There are BPL (Below Poverty Line) and APL (Above Poverty Line) categories for poverty measurement in India.

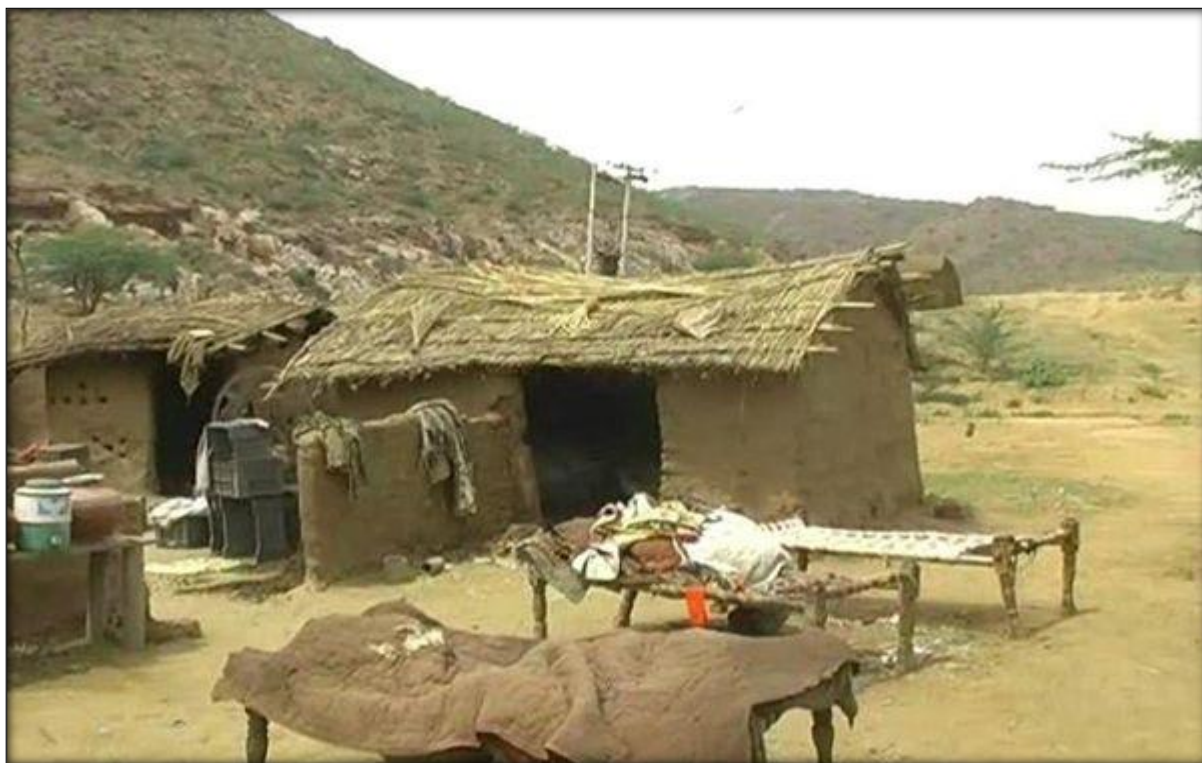


Figure- 18.1 Housing of poor people

Number of poor in India- In India, such data is released by the National Statistical Organization.

Due to poverty- The main cause of poverty in India was large scale de-industrialization in the colonial period. Due to the policies of the British government, rural and agricultural taxes increased. The food grains here were also exported to foreign countries. As a result, 260 lakh people died due to lack of food grains from famines in the period from 1875 AD to 1900 AD. The British Raj had over-exploited natural resources and made crores of Indians poor. Further, low capital formation, lack of based structures, lack of demand, population growth etc. are the reasons for poverty.

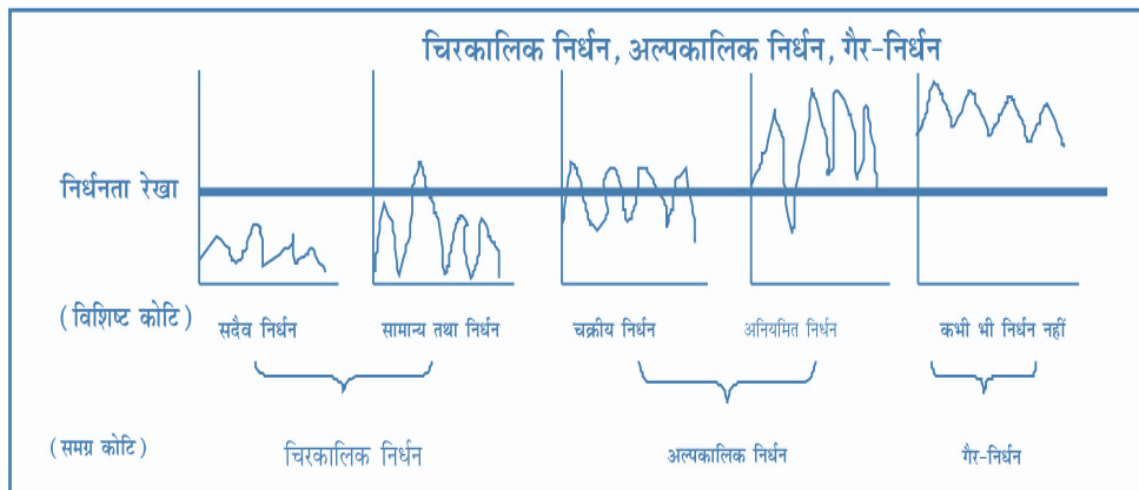
Policies and Programmes for Poverty Alleviation- A number of policies and programmes were launched by the Government for poverty alleviation, with five-year plans as major ones. Apart from this, many other schemes and programs were also run from time to time for poverty alleviation, which are mahatma Gandhi national rural employment guarantee scheme (MGNREGA), Deendayal Antyodaya Yojana, Pradhan Mantri Jeevan Jyoti Yojana, Bharat

Know this also-

- In the year 1973-74, the number of poor in India was more than 320 million (55% of the total population), which decreased to 270 million (22% of the total population) in the year 2011-12.

Nirman Yojana, Pradhan Mantri Awas Yojana, Swarna Jayanti Gram and Urban Self Employment Scheme, Ujjwala Yojana etc.

Poverty Chart 18.1



Review of Poverty Alleviation Programme- Even after the implementation of the above policies and programs by the Government, the problem of poverty remains even today. There has been no revolutionary change in this area. The benefits of schemes and programs being run for the poor class do not reach them due to lack of information. The government runs schemes worth crores and billions of rupees for the upliftment of the poor, but due to lack of effective control, they are not proving beneficial. Therefore, the government and the employees and officers engaged in these schemes will also have to pay attention to this, as well as the poor class will also have to be aware of their rights.

Human Capital- Human capital refers to such qualified people who have been trained in the past and convert human resources in the form of students into human capital such as teachers, farmers, nurses, doctors, engineers.

Sources of Human Capital- Education is considered to be the best source of human capital. Apart from education, investment in health, training during work, management and information etc. are also sources of capital formation. Education leads to the all-round development of human beings. With education, man can achieve the highest social status and glory by choosing better options in his life. The educated person can promote changes, by understanding social changes.

Human Capital and Human Development- In the concept of human capital, education and health are considered as the means to increase the productivity of labor, while in human development, education and health are considered to be integral parts of human welfare. The concept of human capital considers human beings as a means of achieving something.

The state of human capital formation in India- We have talked about it that education, health, workplace training, migration and information investment have an important contribution in human capital formation. A large part of the

population in India is living below the poverty line. Therefore, these people are not able to spend on basic education and health care services. When the government has considered them as civil rights, then these services should be made available free of cost to the government. Now the government is doing that.

Increase in public expenditure on education- Governments spend a lot for the improvement and quality of education. In 1952, education accounted for 7.92% of the total government expenditure, which increased to 15.7% in 2014. Similarly, its percentage in GDP increased from 0.64 (1952 AD) to 4.13 (2014 AD).

Know this also-

- In the year 2021-22, it was estimated to spend 93,224 crores on education.

Prospects of the future- Despite all the government efforts, the number of illiterates is still high. Due to the promotion of female education, the gap between male and female literacy is gradually decreasing. Poor students do not have the capacity to bear the expenses of higher education. The number of educated unemployed in India is high. In the year 2011-12, the unemployment rate among undergraduate and above students was 19%, which has come down to 7.9% in April 2021.

Employment- Generally, employment refers to the economic work done to meet the upbringing and needs of one's family. It is very important for any person to have employment. Some people work in farms, banks, factories, companies, while some work in cottage industries at home. Labour plays an important role in personal and social life. Every working person contributes to the national income.

Workers and Employment- All those people of the country who engage in economic activities are called workers. The nature of employment in our country is multifaceted. Here some people are associated with employment throughout the year, that is, they get employment, while there are some who get employment only a few months in a year.

Know this also-

- At present, the number of workers registered on the e-Shramik portal in India is about 19 crores.

Moreover, most of the workers do not even get proper remuneration. In 2011-12, the number of workers in India was estimated at 473 million, of which three-fourths were from rural areas. 35 out of every 100 people in the country are workers. In urban areas, the ratio is 34 while in rural areas it is 35. High income opportunities in rural areas are limited, which is why their participation in the job market is high. In both urban and rural areas, the participation of men in the labor force is high.

Nature of Workers in India- To understand the nature of workers in India, let us take an example of the construction industry, which consists of three types of personnel. A cement shop is owned or operated, which is called self-employed. Others are construction workers, who are called non-wage workers. Their number is 35% of the workforce. The third is the engineer of the construction company, who is called a regular salaried employee. In the regular salaried category, 23%



are male and 21% female. About 50 per cent of male and female workers in India fall in the self-employed category. Therefore, it can be said that self-employment is the main source of livelihood in the country.

Employment in institutions, industries and offices- The flow of manpower from agriculture and allied activities to industries and services. For this reason, workers migrate to cities. Generally, economic activities are divided into eight industrial classes- 1. Agriculture 2. Mining and Quarrying 3. Manufacturing 4. Electrical Gas and Water Supply 5. Construction work 6. Commerce 7. Transportation and Storage 8. Services.

These industrial classes are divided into three groups-

1. **Primary Sectors-** Agriculture and Mining and Quarrying.
2. **Secondary Sector -** Manufacturing, and Construction Work.
3. **Tertiary sector -** Commerce, Transport and Storage and Services.

Growth and changing employment structure- The main objective of the planned development work going on in India for the last 70 Years is to strengthen the economy by increasing national product and employment. Gdp has increased in this period, but the growth rate in employment has been only 2%, which is worrisome. Production of more goods and services without employment generation is called 'jobless prosperity'. In the last few Years, it has been observed that the labour force is now shifting from agricultural operations (primary sector) to non-agricultural works (secondary and tertiary sector).

Unprofitability of The Indian Workforce- The proportion of casual workers in the labour force is increasing. Workers are not getting their rights. They are exploited in industries. Governments protect their rights by labour laws. The labour force is divided into formal and informal or organized and unorganized sector.

1. **Formal or organized sector:** All public sector establishments and private sector establishments employing 10 or more people fall under the category of organized sector. The employees of the organized sector get the benefits of social security system. Only 6 per cent of the workforce in the country is working in the organised sector.
2. **Informal or unorganized sector-** Apart from these, all enterprises and the workers working in them form the informal or unorganized sector. This includes farmers, agricultural workers, and people with small businesses. 94% of the people in the country are employed in the unorganized sector.

Unemployment- Unemployment is the condition in which a person is left without work due to lack of work. According to economists, unemployed is one who cannot get even an hour's employment in a half-day period. There are three sources of unemployment data in India:

1. Indian Census Data.
2. National Sample Survey Office Data.
3. Registered data of employment office of Directorate General of Employment and Training.



Government and Employment Generation- The Mahatma Gandhi National Rural Employment Guarantee Act, 2005 was passed by the Government, which provides for 100 days of employment to the members of rural households. Direct and indirect efforts are being made by the Central and State Governments for employment generation. In direct employment, the government makes appointments for administrative functions in its departments. The government is also running many industries, hotels and transport companies, in which people get direct employment. Indirect employment is provided by the government through a private institution or individual. For example, if there is a government factory, which is dependent on a firm/private factory to make its products, then the private factory/firm also gets opportunities to increase its production and employment. This gives new employment opportunities to the unemployed. This is an indirect job creation measure of the Government.

After independence, governments have worked towards eradicating poverty by considering it as their primary goal. The Government has also succeeded in this, but it has not been freed from poverty. The Central and State Governments in India have been making adequate financial provisions for development in the field of education and health. Education and health services must be accessible to all sections of the society. For this, the government has enacted the Right to Education Act 2009 AD. Ayushman Yojana 2018 etc. schemes have been implemented. Due to technology development, Indian industries are competing with multinational companies. There have been changes in the labour force structure of India. Now, employment opportunities in the service sector are increasing.

Question

Multiple Choice Questions-

1. Calories are needed a day for people in rural areas-
A. 1800 calories
B. 2100 calories
C. 2400 calories
D. 2700 calories
2. The number of poor in India in the year 1973-74 was-
A. 290 million
B. 310 million
C. 320 million
D. 340 million
3. In human capital is included-
A. Teacher
B. Engineer
C. Doctor
D. All these
4. What percentage of the total workforce in the country is employed in the Organized sector-
A. 94%
B. 60 %
C. 06%
D. 24%



Fill in the blanks -

1. are required a day for people in urban areas (1800 calories /2100 calories)
2. Manufacturing is related to.....sector (Primary/Secondary)
3. Education is considered to be the best source in the concept of..... (Human Capital/Socialism)
4. About.....of Male and female workers in India fall in the self-employed category. (50%/sq. 60%)

Write the true/ false -

1. Human capital includes farmers, teachers, and doctors. True/False
2. Poverty is classified by poverty line. True/False
3. The basic necessities of life are clothes, bread, houses. True/False
4. 94% of India's labour force is employed in the unorganized sector. True/False

Match the pair correctly-

- | | |
|---------------------|------------------|
| 1. Primary Sector | A. Services |
| 2. Secondary Sector | B. Agriculture |
| 3. Tertiary Sector | C. Manufacturing |

Very short answer questions

1. What is poor?
2. What is human capital?
3. What is employment?
4. What is self-employed employment?

Short Answer Questions-

1. How is education useful for human beings?
2. State the major sources of human capital.
3. What do you understand by organized and unorganized sectors?
4. What are the measures being taken by the government to create jobs?

Long Answer Questions -

1. While classifying poverty, mention the programmes of the Government for poverty alleviation.
2. Explain what is meant by unemployment, explain the government's efforts to create jobs.

Project Work-

1. Prepare a critical report of government works happening around you such as roads, dams, schools, hospitals, construction of government offices, cleaning works etc.



Chapter-19

Infrastructure

In this chapter- Infrastructure, condition of infrastructure, energy, sources of energy, Health, Environment, sustainable growth, environmental traditional knowledge, from the point of view of economic development, India Comparative study of China and Pakistan.

In terms of development in India, there has been more growth of primary sector in some States, secondary sector in some States and tertiary sector in some states. The main reason for this development disparity is the infrastructure of those states. All the resources that make the development of a country possible from the infrastructure of the country.

Infrastructure- Infrastructure provides support services to key sectors (agriculture, industry, domestic and foreign trade and commerce) for the strengthening of the economy. These services include rail, road, ports, dams, power plants, schools and colleges, oil and gas pipelines, sanitation, drinking water, health system, banks, insurance, currency system etc. The basic structure is divided into two parts social and economic infrastructure-

1. The social infrastructure includes education, health and housing etc.
2. The economic infrastructure includes energy, transport and communication etc.

Status of Infrastructure- Infrastructure is an effective system of strengthening the economy of any country. It helps in industrialization. This increases the production of agriculture and employment opportunities. It also increases the productivity of elements of production in economic development, thereby improving the quality of life of the people.

It is the entire responsibility of the government to develop infrastructure in India. At the time of independence, the condition of infrastructure in India was very weak. But gradually, at present, the private sector has contributed

Know this also-

- Under the infrastructure sector in Budget 2021-22, the number of 217 projects under the National Infrastructure Pipeline (NIP) has been increased to 7400. On which it is estimated to spend Rs 1.1 lakh crore.

significantly to its development along with the government. For example, according to the 2001 census, 56% of households in India had access to electricity. About 76% of the people here depended on open water sources like wells, ponds, springs, rivers, canals for drinking water. According to the 2020 India

Residential Energy Survey (IRES) report due to infrastructure development, 97% of the areas in India have been electrified. According to the Economic Survey Report 2021-22, under the Jal Jeevan Mission for Drinking Water (2019 AD), till January 2, 2022, the government has provided tap water supply to 5,51,93,885 households.



Energy- Energy plays an important role in the progress of any nation. It is used in agriculture, industry, manufacture of equipment, transportation, etc.

Sources of energy-

1. **Commercial sources-** The energy sources that are purchased and sold are called commercial energy sources. This includes coal, petroleum products and electricity etc.
2. **Non-commercial sources-** Energy sources obtained from nature (forests) are called non-commercial sources. This includes firewood, agricultural waste, dry dung, etc.

Know this also-

- Commercial energy accounts for 74% of the total energy consumption in India.

Commercial and non-commercial sources of energy are called traditional sources. Solar energy, wind energy and tidal energy are considered as non-conventional sources of energy.

Electrical Energy- Electrical energy is considered to be the indicator of the

Know this also-

- Based on the statistics of the Central Electricity Authority for the year 2020-21, 78% of the total electricity generation in India is obtained from thermal sources, 9% from hydro sources, 10% from renewable energy sources and 3% from nuclear sources.

progress of modern civilization. The generation of electricity in India is less than the consumption. The main reasons for this are non-efficiency in power distribution system along with reduction in power generation capacity, unfair prices, shortage of coal supply, continuous economic growth and population growth.

Reforms in the power sector require

technological development, research, development of renewable sources of energy and increase in the role of the private sector.

Health- Health refers not only to the physical health of a person but also to his work ability and prosperity. The overall growth and development of a nation is a process related to health. It is the constitutional responsibility of the government to ensure the right to a healthy life of the citizens. Hospitals, doctors, nurses, beds, medical equipment, etc. are included in the health infrastructure. Health services in rural areas have increased as compared to the past. In 1951, the number of government hospitals and dispensaries was 9,300, which till March 31, 2020, there were 1,55,404 sub-health centers, 24,918 primary health centers and 5,183 community health centers functioning in rural areas. There were 2,517 sub-health centres, 5,895 primary health centres and 466 community health centres in urban areas. (Source: Rural Health Statistics 2017-19 PRS) In addition, smallpox, polio, leprosy etc. have been completely eradicated from India. The private sector is playing an important role in the health infrastructure than the public sector. More than 70% of the hospitals in the country are run by the private sector. The Government of India is estimated to spend a total of Rs 86,201 crore on health in



the budget for the year 2022-23. Along with this, an additional provision of Rs 35,000 crore has been made in the budget to deal with the Covid epidemic.

Table 19.1	
List - Phases Of Vaccination Campaign (January, 2022)	
Date	Group
January 16, 2021	Healthcare And Frontline Workers in Priority Group
March 1, 2021	60+ People And 45+ People With Comorbidity
April 1, 2021	45+ People
May 1, 2021	18+ People
January 3, 2022	Children Between The Ages of 15-18
March 16, 2022	12-14 Year Olds

Indian System of Medicine- There are six systems in the Indian system of medicine- Ayurveda, Yoga, Unani, Siddha, Naturopathy and Homeopathy. Indian system of medicine is also called 'AYUSH'. Less than 20% of India's population uses public health services. In most of the places, there is a shortage of vacant posts of doctors, adequate health check-up centres, machines, beds etc. If we talk about women's health, then India's position is also not good in this. 50% of women in the age group of 15-49 suffer from anaemia and anemia. Due to child marriage, most girls become mothers at an early age, due to which they suffer from physical and mental diseases. To improve the health of women, the government also needs to increase and improve health services.

The growth of health services in rural areas in India has been very low. The condition of medical services like infant, female, surgical etc. in rural areas is negligible. The main reason for this is that most of the government and private hospitals have been built in urban areas. Similarly, there is a huge disparity between the rich and the poor in the receipt of health services. Due to lack of adequate facilities in government hospitals, poor people have to go to expensive private hospitals for treatment, due to which they become indebted or die.

Environment- We have done a lot of damage to the environment for the development and economic growth of the Indian economy. If we don't give importance to the environment, the consequences will be terrible. Therefore, we must consider efforts to achieve environmental functions, vital status and sustainable development to protect mankind from future threats.

The environment around us, which includes all the biotic and abiotic elements, is called the environment. Biotic elements include animals, birds, forests, fish, etc. while abiotic elements include air, water, soil, etc.

Environmental functions- The environment mainly performs four essential functions-

1. The environment absorbs the residue.
2. Provides aesthetic services.
3. Supplies renewable and non-renewable resources.
4. It nourishes life by providing genetic and biological diversity.



The environment can perform the above functions only when they fall within its holding limits. Pollution today is outside the absorbent capacity of the environment due to population growth and excessive exploitation of resources. As a result, there has been an increase in water infectious diseases, ozone depletion, global warming, etc.

Know this also-

- The capacity of the environment to absorb weathering is called absorptive capacity.
- The increase in the average temperature of the Earth's atmosphere and oceans is called global warming.

Environmental Status of India- India has immense environmental or natural resources. We have lush green forests, hundreds of minerals, a wide area of the Indian Ocean. India has sufficient reserves of fertile soil, iron ore, coal, natural gas, copper, bauxite, diamond, gold, lead, manganese, uranium, zinc etc. for economic development. Serious environmental problems in India include water pollution, air pollution, soil erosion, forest erosion and extinction of wildlife. India has 17% of the world's total population and 2.5% of the geographical area. Air pollution is higher in urban areas than in rural areas. The biggest cause of air pollution is the smoke emitted from vehicles. The Central Pollution Control Board has identified 17 industries as highly polluting industries.

Environmental Traditional Knowledge- Since the beginning of creation, Indian people have been close to the environment. Our sages and sages used to nurture the environment by staying in the forests. Therefore, trees, animals, etc. have been given a great place in our civilization and culture. There are 15,000 species of plants in India with medicinal properties, out of which 8000 herbs are still used in treatment. The allopathy system of the West has damaged our heritage a lot, but today gradually people are understanding that various diseases are effectively diagnosed by the ancient herbs of India. At present all herbal beauty products are prevalent.

Our history has been environment friendly, so we have to protect it. Organic manure should be used in place of chemical fertilizers and pesticides in agriculture. Natural pesticides should be prepared. The crop cycle should be adopted.

Sustainable Development- Along with the development of the economy, we also need to pay attention to environmental protection, because industrial development and our lifestyle have increased the destruction of the environment. The United Nations Conference on Environment and Development (UNCED) has defined sustainable development as: Development that meets the needs of the present generation without compromising the needs of future generations is called sustainable development.

Know this also-

- India has 20% iron ore deposits of the whole world.

Sustainable Development Plans–



1. **Non-conventional sources of energy-** India is currently more dependent on thermal and hydro power plants for power generation. Carbon dioxide gas and ash emitted from these plants cause great damage to the environment. To avoid this environmental damage, we should develop technology for non-conventional sources of energy, such as solar and wind energy.
2. **LPG in rural areas Gobar Gas** - In rural areas, earlier, wood, tubers and other organic materials were used as fuel, which caused environmental pollution. Now the government is providing liquefied petroleum gas free of cost in rural areas under the Ujjwala scheme and gobar gas plants are being set up.
3. **High pressure natural gas in urban areas-** High pressure natural gas (CNG) is now being used as fuel in vehicles in big cities, which has reduced air pollution.
4. **Wind power-** Windmills should be installed in areas with high air flow, so that electricity can be obtained and pollution can be avoided.

In addition to the above we should use solar energy and electricity can be obtained through springs in hilly areas.

Comparative study of India, China and Pakistan from the point of view of economic development- India, Pakistan and China are the three parts of the Continent of Asia. India and Pakistan in 1947 The Republic of China was established in 1949. There are many similarities in the developmental policies of the three. All three started together on the development path. In the direction of development, India started 1951 AD. Pakistan started its first five-year plans in 1956 and China in 1953. By the 1980s, the growth rate and per capita income of the three countries were also the same. The previous chapters have studied the policies adopted for development in independent India. For comparative studies, we have to study the development policies of China and Pakistan.

China- The Republic of China was established under a one-party (Communist Party) regime in China. The Chinese government had taken over enterprises, important areas, land, etc. In the year 1998, the government launched the ‘Great Leap Forward’ campaign, whose main objective was to establish more and more industries in the country. The number of communes (collective farming of people) was increased to promote agriculture in China. All the farmers were included in the communes. Reforms in China began in several phases. First of all, reforms were carried out in agriculture, foreign trade and investment sectors. After this, there were reforms in the industrial sector. Special Economic Zones (SEZs) were set up to attract foreign investors.

Know this also-

- State owned enterprises in China O. E. (Public Sector) is called.

Pakistan- Pakistan is a mixed economy country similar to India. In which the public and private sector co-exist. Here, mechanization started after the Green Revolution. Government investment in basic sectors increased, leading to



increase in production of foodgrains. In the 1970s, capital industries were nationalized here.

Demographic indicators- China is larger in population than India and Pakistan, but population density is low. Pakistan's population growth rate is the highest among them. An offspring policy was implemented in China in the 1970s. The sex ratio in these three countries is not in favour of women. China had to change its one-child policy and allow two children. Most of China's population lives in cities while only 33% of India's population lives in cities.

Gross domestic product (GDP) and sector- China ranks second in the world in terms of gross domestic product (GDP), which is 22.5 trillion. While India and Pakistan have 9.3 trillion and 1.1 trillion respectively. Only 10% of the total land in China is arable, while until the 1980s, 80% of the population here depended on agriculture for livelihood. But today, urbanization has reduced the agricultural sector. Pakistan, China and India had 27%, 12%, and 17% respectively in the service sector in the 1980s, which increased to 34%, 43%, and 29% respectively in 2014 AD. Manufacturing and services sectors contribute to China's economic growth, while the services sector contributes more to India's economic growth. In Pakistan, all three sectors have declined in this period (1980-2015). Per capita income, sanitation, life expectancy literacy are ahead of China, India and Pakistan in all areas.

An evaluation of development policies- All countries adopt different approaches to their development process. During the Maoist rule in China, economic growth was slow and lack of modernization. China's development was slow even after extensive land reforms, communityization and the Great Leap Forward and other reforms. After 1978, China developed rural industries, increased per capita income, and laid a strong foundation for further reforms. If we talk about Pakistan, then according to scholars, despite the reforms here, all economic indicators have declined. However, in the last few Years, Pakistan has regained its economic growth.

India has grown like other developing countries. China decided structural reforms on its own, while India and Pakistan were forced by international bodies to undertake such reforms. China has moved from agriculture to manufacturing and service sector respectively, adopting the traditional development policy, while India and Pakistan have moved directly from agriculture to service sector. India's economy is currently growing rapidly. As a result, today India is the fifth largest economy in the world.

Question

Multiple Choice Questions-

1. In the biological components of the environment is included-
A. air B. matsya C. soil D. water
2. There are Species of plants with medicinal properties in India-
A. 15,000 B. 17,000 C. 18,000 D. 10,000



3. According to the 2011 census in India People have electricity facility-
 - A. 50%
 - B. 56%
 - C. 62%
 - D. 68%
4. The Indian system of medicine is called-
 - A. Chirag
 - B. Utkarsh
 - C. Ayush
 - D. Vaibhav

Fill in the blanks -

1. The main reason for the inequality of development in India is the states. (Basic Structure/Natural Structure)
2. In the 1970s. A child policy was implemented. (China/India)
3. In The Indian System of Medicine. There are arrangements. (6/8)
4. India and the whole world. There are reserves of iron ore. (22%/20%).

Write the true/false-

1. Fish is involved in the biological components of the environment. True/False
2. India started the Five Year Plan in 1955. True/False
3. India is home to 17% of the world's population. True/False
4. In the year 1998, the government launched the Great Leap Forward Campaign. True/False

Match the pair correctly

Launch of Country Five Year Plan

- | | |
|-------------|---------|
| 1. India | A. 1956 |
| 2. Pakistan | B. 1951 |
| 3. China | C. 1953 |

Very short answer questions-

1. What do you mean by health?
2. What are the 6 systems in the Indian system of medicine?
3. Explain the difference between biotic and abiotic components of the environment.
4. Name the full name of LPG and CNG.
5. What is global warming?

Short Answer Questions-

1. Describe the major measures for environmental protection.
2. What do you understand by the two parts of infrastructure?
3. What were the differences in the development policies of India, Pakistan and China?
4. What functions does the environment primarily perform?

Long Answer Questions-

1. What do you mean by infrastructure? State its current status and relevance.



-
2. What do you understand by environment? Explain the importance of ancient Indian knowledge tradition in the environment.

Project Work-

1. At present, organize a debate competition in the classroom about the Indian economy.



Ved Vibhushan

1st Year

Sociology



Chapter-20

Social Structure and Transformation

in this chapter- Social Structure, Social Stratification, Cooperation and Division of Labour, Competition in Society, Conflict in Society, Social Transformation, Social System in Rural and Urban Society.

Social structure- The structure of society is especially in order and regular. The term social structure was first used in modern times by Herbert Spencer in his book Principles of Sociology in 1885. Fixed patterns of social behavior are inherent in the social structure. Just as hands, feet, eyes, nose, ears, etc. contribute to the structure of the body, social structure is contributed by social units such as groups, committees, institutions, family, social norms, etc, the development of the concept of social structure is found in the Purusha Sukta of the tenth mandal of the Rigveda- ब्राह्मणोऽस्य मुखमासी द्वाहु राजन्यः कृतः ऊरोः तदस्यः यद्वैश्यः पद्भ्यां शूद्रो अजायत। (10.90.12) That is, the face of the great man of the society is described as Brahmin, arms are described as Kshatriyas, thighs vaishyas and pad shudras, who nourish the entire society by doing their work as a part of the society. By living together, it is possible to achieve the basic purpose of life (moksha). In the Vedas, social inequality and hierarchy have been opposed. A person is not considered as small or big based on clan, lineage and work etc. It has been said in Atharvaveda that we should not make anyone a slave nor should anyone make us slaves. Stay together in all the organizations- अश्मन्वती रीयते सं रभध्वं वीर्यध्वं प्र तरता सखायः। अत्रा जहीत ये असन्दुरेवा अन्वीवानुत्तरेमाभि वाजान्॥ (12.2.26) That is, everyone is surely uplifted to live together lovingly in this inaccessible ocean of the world. Thus we can say that social structure is not a new concept. We find many examples of this in Vedic literature.

Characteristics of social structure- Social structure is formed by family, institutions, committees, groups, etc. Just as the land, walls, roof together give a shape to a building, similarly the characteristics of the social structure also give it a form. The main features of social structure are as follows:

- It is permanent.
- Its nature is abstract.
- This gives us knowledge of the external nature of society.
- Social processes such as cooperation, assimilation, adaptation, administration, competition, etc. are the strong sides of the social structure.

Social Stratification- Social stratification is the process in which groups of individuals are classified in different classes in order from high to low according to the amount of their prestige, wealth and power.

Characteristics of Social Stratification-

- It is socio-cultural.



- It is a division of society into highs and lows.
- It is a universal process.
- It contains the distribution of status and position.
- It is man-made.

Cooperation and division of labor- People living in the society are connected to each other by mutual cooperation, love, harmony, brotherhood. If there is a lack of these qualities in the society, then the existence of mankind will become endangered. This spirit of cooperation is found not only in humans but also in animals, birds and other organisms. According to the leading sociologist Durkheim, "Unity is the moral force of society and it is the basic ingredient for cooperation and thus understanding the functions of society".

Competition in society- There is cooperation, love, harmony as well as competition in the society. Competition is a social process, which originated in society itself. Competition in human beings takes place since childhood, such as competition in the field of studies, sports, etc. is seen in various children in school. It has changed over time. Competition is a key criterion and practice in the contemporary world. Competition is considered to be the strong ideology of capitalism, according to which the market works in such a way that maximum efficiency can be ensured.

Conflict in society- Conflict means conflict in the interest of the individual. Due to the scarcity of resources in the society, the desire to get them gives rise to conflict. Cooperation, competition and conflict are different social processes in society but these three live together in society. In the system of social structure and stratification, all three processes are located in different forms and work for social groups.

Social Transformation- Changes in social structure, social system, social values, customs and traditions, socio-cultural parameters, etc. in the society are called



Figure- 20.1 Modern Gurukul

Social Transformation. In ancient times, education was usually imparted in gurukuls in the open sky in the shade of trees, in forests, on the banks of rivers, outside the village or city. At that time the education system was free. But gradually the society changed and at present education is given in multi-storey buildings with modern facilities with hefty fees. During the Pandemic Period schools and colleges were closed. A new mean of e-classroom, online class and digital education have developed. Similarly, in

ancient times, water was available free of cost to all. In this era of social change, water has taken the form of an industry today.

Characteristics of Social Transformation -

- There are different forms of Social Transformation.
- The pace of social change is uneven and relative.
- No definite prediction can be made.
- Community change is, in fact, Social Transformation.
- It is a worldwide process.

Know this also-

- We call the changes in social relations as Social Transformation. maciver and page

Major sources/factors of Social Transformation-

1. **Environmental factors-** nature, ecology, physical environment etc.
2. **Technical factors-** research, invention, industrialization, mechanization etc.
3. **Political factors -** the coming from monarchy to democracy, wars and treaties, elections, etc.
4. **Economic factors-** Railways, trade, agriculture, animal husbandry, aspiration for higher standard of living etc.
5. **Cultural factors -** religion, family, status of women, sports etc.

Social system in rural and urban society- Maintaining a particular type of social relations, values and parameters is called social system. The social system is a group of interacting individuals. In ancient times, there were different patterns of social order. Gradually, they changed over time. At present, the social system has completely changed. There is also a lot of difference in rural and urban social systems.

Characteristics of social system- Mutual cooperation and harmony, large culture (many customs, practices, etc.), group and sub-groups, collective unity, division of labor, regionalism, self-reliance etc. are the main features of the social system.

Social system in rural areas- Village is a group of families that are settled in a certain area and are known by a specific name. Villages are smaller than cities social traditions and practices are continuing here.

Characteristics of social system of rural area- Main occupations of agriculture and animal husbandry, low population and small area, importance to primary groups, primacy of caste system, joint family system, proximity to nature, external arrogance and orthodoxy, common culture, human values (love, harmony, cooperation, Brotherhood etc.) are the main features of the social system of the rural area.

Social system in towns and cities- Generally, both towns and cities have the same type of system. The difference between the two is based on the size. Towns are smaller than cities. When the trends of large villages in terms of population become urbanized, they are called towns. Thus, it can be said that the town contains both rural and urban characteristics.

Characteristics of social system of urban areas - single family system, energy management, individualism, social mobility, plurality of occupations, more



population and more area, breakdown of human relations, increasing criminalization, increasing loneliness among children, planned settlements and waste management, Proper water management etc. are the main features of the social system of urban areas.

Question

Multiple Choice Questions-

1. used first the term social structure-
A. Herbert Spencer B. Comt C. Durkheim D. Weber
2. Is not one of the Characteristics of the Rural Society?
A. Dependence on agriculture B. Close relationship with nature
C. population density D. Plurality of primary relations
3. Is the author of the book titled 'Principles of Sociology'?
A. H. M. Johnson B. Maciver and Page
C. Karl Marx D. Herbert Spencer

Fill in the blanks-

1. Sources of employment in rural areas are
(Agriculture and Animal Husbandry/Industry)
2. Principal of Sociology was written by (Durkheim/Spencer)
3. Speed of social change And it is relative. (Same/unequal)

Write the true/ false-

1. Joint family system is a characteristic of urban areas. True/False
2. There is adequate availability of employment in rural areas. True/False
3. The term social structure was first used by Comte. True/False

Match the pair correctly-

1. Environmental factors A. Agriculture, animal husbandry, trade etc.
2. Technical factors B. Nature, ecology, physical environment etc.
3. Economic factors C. Invention, industrialization, mechanization etc.

Very short answer questions-

1. What do you mean by social structure?
2. What is social order?
3. What is a town?

Short Answer Questions-

1. Write down the characteristics of social stratification.
2. Write down the characteristics of the social system of rural areas.
3. Explain the difference between town and city.



Long Answer Questions-

1. Explain the concept of social structure and describe its characteristics.
2. What do you understand by social change and order?

Project Work-

1. Make a comparative study of ancient and modern education systems under social changes.



Chapter-21

Environment and Society

In this chapter- Concept of environment in Vedic literature, Concept of environment in Sanskrit and Puranic literature, Components of environment, Relationship and effects of society and environment, Measures for environmental protection, Chipko movement, C.N.G., Acid rain, greenhouse effect.

The general meaning of environment is the environment around us. In a broad sense, the physical and biological environment and their factors, which have an impact on the life of an organism, are called environment. Climate, soil, vegetation, fauna, architecture, etc. are all different elements of the environment. The respected place enjoyed by the environment in Indian culture and literature is rarely found in any other country of the world.

Concept of Environment in Vedic Literature- In Vedic literature, परितः आवरणं इति पर्यावरणं the whole form of the five elements (earth, water, fire, air, sky), human beings, animals, plants, etc. has been accepted under the environment, while formulating the concept of environment. In Vedic literature, all the things given by God have been approved for use in a free manner as per the need. All the things provided by the environment have been considered incomparable in Indian culture. The water sources of rivers like Ganga, Yamuna, and Saraswati etc. have been considered as venerable. In the Vedas, nature is worshipped as mother. In India, there is a practice of giving half to fire, water, air, earth. We bow down to the sun and the moon. Tulsi and Peepal (Ashwattha) are thought to be that these two trees release oxygen every day. In ancient Indian literature, religion, philosophy and society, the interstitial thought begins with Vedic and Sanskrit literature. Ancient Indian culture has been embellished with the term Vedic culture or Tapovani culture. In the four parts of the Varnashram system, the ascetics towards the Vanaprastha Ashram were expected to depend on the forest itself. It was due to the dependence on forests that human beings and society could properly realize the inevitability of their conservation and promotion. ॐ ईशावास्यामिदं सर्वं यत्किञ्च जगत्यां जगत् । तेन त्यक्तेन भुञ्जीथा मा गृधः कस्य स्विद्धनम् ॥ (यजुर्वेद 40.1) That is, whatever is rooted or conscious in this creation, it is all covered by God. Consume only what he has left for use. Don't

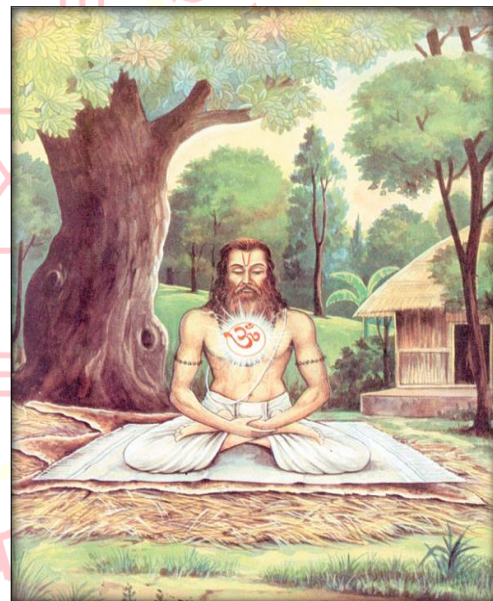


Figure- 21.1 Ascetic in the forest

be greedy for more, whose money is this? Explaining the importance of water in the Atharva Samhita, it is written that the rays of the sun draw water from the sea etc. That water again rains and gives us food and happiness. अपो देवीरूप ह्यये यत्र गावः पिबन्ति नः । सिन्धुभ्यः कर्त्तुं हविः । (1.4.3) अथर्ववेद The purity and purity of water are explained in detail in the Atharvaveda. We sing the water that our cows consume. We offer our best to the water flowing in space and on the ground. ईशाना वार्याणां क्षयन्तीश्चर्षणीनाम् । अपो याचामि भेषजम् । (1.5.4) The entire earth is basically dependent on rainfall for water, and so the feeling of respect for clouds is seen in Vedic literature. The land is considered to be like a mother, accepting this feeling, it has been said - माता भूमिः पुत्रोऽहम् पृथिव्याः । (12.1.12) that is, the earth is our mother and we are all its sons. Protecting and nurturing the earth is not a normal act, a person who is knowledgeable of all circumstances regarding the land, full of penance, is truthful, full of sacrifice and sacrifice and is strong, can nurture and protect the motherland.

In the Rudradhyaya of yajurveda samhita, respect has been expressed for the keepers of the tree - नमो वृक्षेभ्यो हरिकेशेभ्यः पशुनां पतये नमो नमः । वृक्षाणां पतये नमः । अरण्यानां पतये नमः ॥ (16.17) That is, we salute the keeper of trees and animals (animals) with green hair (leaves). Salutations to the keeper of the trees. Salutations to the keeper of the forests. In the Yajurveda Samhita itself, it has been called upon all the flora that they should always be sweet for the life of man and all beings. मधुमान्नो वनस्पतिर्मधुमाँ अस्तु । (13.29) In order to keep the environment intact, blood relations have been established in almost all the elements of nature, many rituals proclaiming the earth as mother and sky as father are found in Vedic literature.

It is clear from the above discussion that in Vedic literature, the spirit of divinity has been created in various elements of nature and a sacrificial culture has been developed to express gratitude to them, which establishes sweet relations in the heart of human beings with environmental factors.

Concept of environment in Sanskrit and mythological literature- Sanskrit literature moved towards that culture of Vedic literature, by which nature has been associated with the religious, moral, spiritual and culture of man. The basic five elements of nature have found a proper place in this literature and the tradition of their well conservation and promotion has been created. The glorious long tradition of Sanskrit literature has a long series of poets, acharyas and thinkers, in which Valmiki,

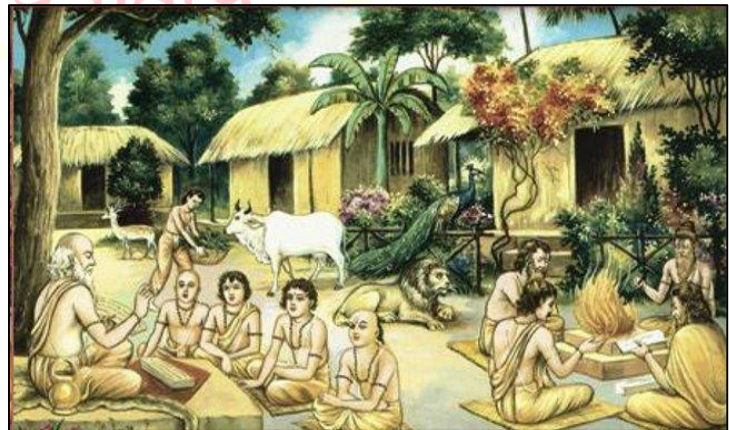


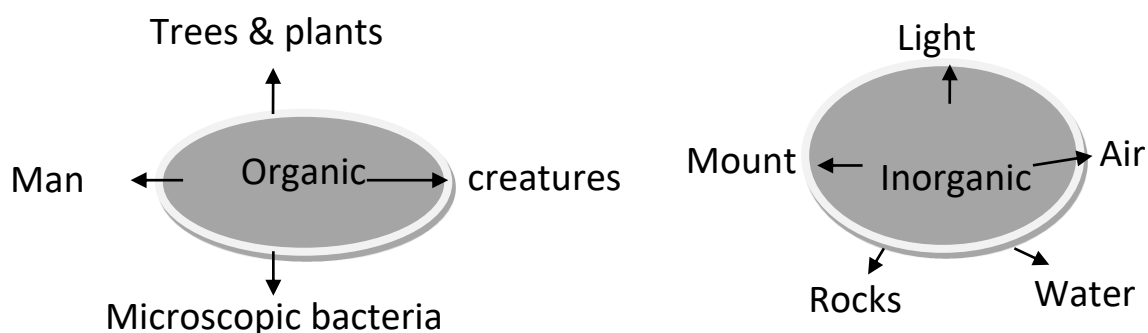
Figure- 21.2 Ancient School

Kalidasa, Vyasa, Manu, Bhasa, Bharvi, Dandi, Bhavabhuti, and Banabhatta etc. are many poets. The depiction of love for the environment by these poets in their poetry is unique in global literature.

In the light of references to the importance of the sun, sky, mountains, earth, air and space as well as the water of the ganges, Maharishi Vyas has said - यथा हीनं नमोऽर्केण भूः शैलेः खं च वायुना । तथा देशा दिशश्चैव गङ्गाहीना न संशयः ॥ That is, just as the sky without the sun, the earth without the mountain, and space without the wind are not beautiful, so the countries and directions that are devoid of ganga ji also do not have a beauty. In Indian religion and philosophy, the place of Shrimad Bhagavad Gita is very sacred and philosophical, in the Gita Shri Krishna describes himself as Ganga River- स्रोतसामस्मि जाह्नवी (10.31) in the entire Sanskrit and mythological literature, water is described in various forms. All these forms are for conservation and promotion of water. In matsya purana, the principle of surrendering water in a real pilgrimage form has been propounded, water is as important for human beings as pilgrimage. अनुद्धृतैरुद्धृतैर्वा जलैः स्नानं समाचरेत् । तीर्थं प्रकल्पयेद् विद्वान् मूलमत्रेण मन्त्रवित् ॥ That is, while bathing with the water of wells and ponds, etc., The mantra scholar should imagine pilgrimage in that water through the mulmantra.

In Sanskrit literature, air is accepted as a divine part and considered as the human lifeline. Being located in a chain of worship, air becomes easily protected. When the tree grown in the village is covered with flowers and fruits and there is no other tree of that species in the village, then the same tree is revered and recognized as the Chaitya tree. It is said in Matsya Purana - दश कूप-समोवापी, दशवापी समोहदः । दश हृद-समः पुत्रो, दश पुत्रसमो द्रुम ॥ That is, there is one bawdi equal to ten wells, one pond equal to ten ponds, one son equal to ten ponds and one tree equal to ten sons. Thus, it can be said that in Sanskrit-mythological literature, the environment and its components have been given a respectable place.

Environmental components- Environment is a dynamic concept that also includes the relationship of an organism with bio and non-living things. Bio-environment includes all the plants and organisms of the earth's system. Abiotic environment includes land, water, and air in their diverse physical forms. All these are integral parts of the environment.



Environmental components

Classification of environment- On the basis of the process of production or development, the environment is divided into two parts natural and man-made environment.

1. **Natural Environment-** Natural environment refers to all the physical forces, processes and elements that have a direct impact on human beings. These forces include solar eclipse, daily and annual rotation movements of the earth, gravitational force, volcanic activities, movement of the earth's crust and life-related scenes. It includes all the natural elements provided by nature, such as geology, rocks, climate, vegetation, wildlife, minerals, reservoirs, oceans, etc.
2. **Man made-** Man-made environment differs from the physical environment. It includes buildings, parks, villages, cities, hospitals, roads, rails, dams, customs, food, festivals, etc. With the help of human technical development in the natural environment, the man-made environment is created and it continues to be tailored to its needs. For example, he cultivates and rears land in grasslands. By clearing the forests, it builds new settlements, roads, canals, railways, etc. Cut the mountains and remove tunnels etc. Mining minerals from the ground makes many equipment weapons, instruments, etc. In this way, human beings fulfill their needs by exploiting the natural forces in different ways.

Relationship and influence of society and environment- Due to the interrelationship between society and environment, both are dependent on each other. The environment nourishes and influences society. Along with human society, other living beings also depend on the environment for food, water, air and shelter. Society is dependent on the components of the environment for its physical, economic, social and industrial progress. Man has built farms, towns, cities, roads, railways, dams and canals by using the components of the environment. At some places the environment influences him and at some places he has to adapt and change with it, this is called environmental adjustment.



Figure- 21.3 Environmental protection

Need for environmental protection- Environmental protection means the protection or protection of the environment. In the Vedas, it has been told about the sacrifice of medicines like Goghrit, Google, and Pippali etc. in fire for environmental purification. The rays of the sun combine with the air to make these medicines more useful - तवायं भाग ऋत्विजः सरश्मिः सूर्ये सचा । (ऋ.1.135.3) we can say that we should officially protect the environment and its components. So that our future generations can also benefit from it and enjoy the beauty of nature. We

should not overestimate nature in any way due to our own self-interest, otherwise its consequences will be very fatal in the coming time.

We celebrate World Environment Day on June 5 every year, in which the message of protecting the environment is given to more and more people. The Wildlife Protection Act and the Forest Protection Act came into force on September 9, 1972, for the protection of wildlife by the government, in which many amendments have been made over time.

Environmental protection measures-

1. We should plant more trees and inspire others to do the same.
2. Industries and factories should be relocated away from population and rivers and the smoke emanating from them should be refined and released.
3. Garbage and other waste items should not be thrown into the rivers.
4. Organic or indigenous fertilizers should be promoted in place of poisonous pesticides and fertilizers in agriculture.
5. Carbon dioxide, nitrogen, sulfuric acid, nitric acid from generators, Air Conditioner (AC), inverters etc. are dissolved in the atmosphere every moment, so we have to use them either not at all or at least.
6. Importance should be given to water conservation.
7. To keep the environment safe, the concept of 3R (Recycle, Reduce and Reuse) has to be adopted.
8. One must plant a sapling on special occasions of your life (birthdays, wedding anniversaries, etc.).

Chipko Movement- Chipko Movement was a movement related to environmental protection, which started in 1972 AD in Tehri Garhwal of Uttarakhand and northern parts of Himachal Pradesh. In this movement, people hugged the trees so that no one could cut them. This hug actually became a symbol of love between nature and human beings, so it was called Chipko

Movement. This movement started from Tehri under the leadership of Sunderlal Bahuguna, in which he went from village to village and undertook about 5000 km long Trans Himalaya Padyatra from 1981 AD to 1983 AD to bring awareness among the people. Apart from this, the work of Gaura Devi, Kamred Govind Singh Rawat, and Chandi Prasad Bhatt etc. in this movement is also commendable.

Know this also-

- The Forest Act came into force in British India in 1927 AD.
- Around 27 women sacrificed their lives along with Gaura Devi in the Chipko movement.
- The slogan of the Chipko movement – what are the benefits of the forest, soil, water and wind. Soil, water and wind, the basis of being alive.

The Chipko movement succeeded in 1980, when the then Prime Minister Indira Gandhi banned the felling of trees in the Himalayan forests (uttarakhand region) for 15 Years and made environment a major issue on the agenda of central politics.



Compressed Natural Gas- compressed natural gas is called in short form CNG. To use this gas in vehicles, 200-250 kg. It is made by pressing up to per square cm. running a vehicle on CNG not only reduces environmental pollution but is also cheaper.

Acid rain- Carbon dioxide, sulphur dioxide (SO_2), nitric oxide, etc. gases emitted from various production activities, industries, factories, vehicles and oil refineries dissolve in the air and react with the vapor to form sulfuric acid and nitric acid. If these acids fall on the earth with rainwater, it is called acid rain.

Green House Effect- Green house effect is a natural phenomenon, which helps to keep the earth's surface warm. So the life on the earth is also possible. In the greenhouse effect, the energy coming from the sun comes to the greenhouse by crossing a surface in the form of light rays. Some part of this energy is absorbed due to soil, tree plants and greenhouse effect. Most of this absorbed energy converts into heat and keeps the temperature of the earth fixed. Water vapor, carbon dioxide, methane, ozone and nitrous oxide etc. are useful gases of major greenhouse effect. Due to over-exploitation of natural resources by human beings, the temperature of the earth is continuously increasing. This has resulted in desert floods, lack of rainfall in areas with extreme rainfall, melting of glaciers, rise in sea level etc. Therefore, to avoid this crisis, we have to work fast towards environmental protection.

Question

Multiple Choice Questions-

1. The World Environment Day is celebrated on-
A. June 1 B. 5 June C. 10 June D. 15 June
2. Sundar Lal Bahuguna is known for-
A. Chipko movement
B. Farmers' movement
C. Water movement
D. None of the above
3. are included in the natural environment-
A. Rocks B. vegetation C. Wildlife D. All above
4. Wildlife Protection Act in India was implemented on-
A. September 5, 1970 B. September 5, 1971
C. 9 September 1972 D. 9 September 1973

Fill in the blanks-

1. Plants provide.....to humans (Nitrogen/Oxygen)
2. Nature is worshiped as..... in the Vedas (Mother/Goddess)
3. The Earth is basically depended on.....for water. (Rain/cloud)
4.Contribution in the Chipko Movement is Commendable.
(Gauradevi/ Mayadevi)



Write the true/false-

1. The environment includes both biotic and abiotic components. True/False
2. World Environment Day is celebrated on June 1. True/False
3. The Forest Act came into force for the first time in India in 1927. True/False
4. Life on earth is possible due to the greenhouse effect. True/False

Perfect pair match-

- | | |
|------------------------------|-----------|
| 1. Wildlife Act | A. 1980 |
| 2. Chipko Movement | B. 1972 |
| 3. Forest (Conservation) Act | C. 5 June |
| 4. World Environment Day | D. 1972 |

Very short answer questions-

1. What is meant by environment?
2. What was the main objective of chipko movement?
3. Write the full name of CNG.
4. What are the various factors/components of the environment?
5. What do you mean by acid rain?

Short Answer Questions-

1. What is meant by environmental adjustment?
2. Describe the biotic and abiotic components of the environment.
3. What do you understand by man-made environment?
4. Write a comment on the relationship between society and environment.
5. Write a comment on 'Chipko Movement'.

Long Answer Questions-

1. Explain the concept of environment in Vedic and Sanskrit literature.
2. What do you mean by environmental protection? Explain the various Measures.

Project Work-

1. Draw pictures of any five trees.
2. All students in their school should plant 2-2 trees towards environmental Protection.



Chapter 22

Prominent Sociologist

In this chapter- Introduction to Socialism, Enlightenment, French Revolution, Industrial Revolution, Major Western Sociologists, Beginning of Sociology Subject in India, Major Ancient Indian Sociologists, Major Modern Indian Sociologists.

Introduction to Sociology- Knowledge, Scientific Revolution, French Revolution and Industrial Revolution have an important contribution in the origin of sociology subject. Therefore, sociology is also called the child of the 'age of revolution'. Auguste Comte is considered the 'father of sociology'. Western sociologists Karl Marx, Max Weber and Emil Durkheim are said to be the holders of the classical tradition of modern sociology. The sociological vision and public sentiments in India can be seen as a vast and healthy tradition since civilizational times. In Vedic literature, there are many examples of the feeling of equality, freedom and fraternity in the organized and public welfare nature of society. Manu, Yajñavalkya, Narada etc. were ancient Indian social thinkers. The leading Indian thinkers of modern sociology are Govind Sadashiv Ghuraye, Dhurjit Prasad Mukherjee, Akshay Ramanlal Desai, and M.M. Srinivas etc. Let us discuss the transformative intellectual consequences in the East and the West that led to the emergence of sociology.

Enlightenment- In Western Europe, between the 17th-18th centuries, new and original approaches to think about the world developed, which was named The Enlightenment. Enlightenment is an ideology in which man has been established as the focal point of the entire universe, while on the other hand, conscience is considered as the main characteristic of man. Enlightenment is the contribution of those ideological tendencies, which we call secularism, scientific and humanistic thought, in changing the reality from the possibility.

The French Revolution- was from 1789 to 1799, which was a milestone in the history of Europe. Rousseau, Voltaire and Montesquieu contributed significantly to this revolution. At the time of the French Revolution, France was ruled by Louis XII. The revolution resulted in many changes in France. People had the right to equality, religious and social freedom before the law and state institutions. The spirit of equality, freedom and fraternity is considered by modern sociologists to be the product of the French Revolution.

Industrial Revolution- Industrial revolution is believed to have originated in Britain in the 18th-19th century with the textile industry. There were two main reasons for this - first, mechanization of industries with science and technology and the use of new sources of energy. Second, labour and markets should be organized on a large scale in a new form. As a result, the new industrial cities were developed in England, the economic situation was also greatly strengthened.



Prominent Western Sociologist-

August Kamte (1798-1857 AD)- Mary François Xavier Comte was born on



Fig- 22.1 August

January 19, 1798, in Montpellier, France. August Kamte was a great social thinker and empiricist thinker. He considered the knowledge gained from the scientific method to be important. He believed that in the study of social phenomena, it is necessary to interpret events by historical method with order of observation, testing and classification. Comte died in 1857 at the age of 59. Comte has propounded sociology as a systematic science. August Comte is called the father of sociology. Kamte has authored several fundamental books - A Prospectus of the

Scientific Works Requested for the Reorganization of Society, The Course of Positive Philosophy, System of Positive Politics, Catchism Positivism, etc.

Karl Marx (1818-1883)- Karl Marx was born on May 5, 1818 in Rhineland (Germany). Highly influenced by Hegel's ideas, Karl Marx studied philosophy and history and studied law at the University of Bonn.

Marx resolved to abolish capitalism, so he is called the messiah of peasants, laborers and victims. Capitalism, class struggle, historical materialism, social change, etc. are their main principles. According to Marx, the cause of unrest and dissatisfaction in the world is the conflict between the poor and the rich. He has called this struggle a class struggle. Holy Family, Das Capital, the Poverty of Philosophy are his major and famous works. Marx was expelled from his country in 1849, after which he lived in England for life. He died in London on March 14, 1883, at the age of 64.

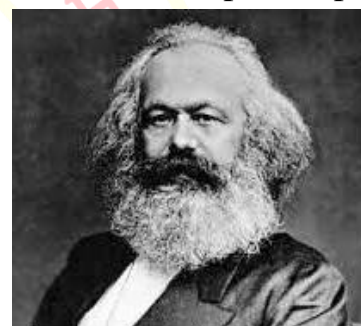


Figure- 22.2 Karl Marx

Emil Durkheim (1858-1917)- Emil Durkheim was born on April 15, 1858, in

Aspinall (Lauren, France). Emil Durkheim studied economics, folk-psychology and cultural anthropology in Germany. In 1913, he established sociology as a recognized subject. He was also a great teacher and thinker. Durkheim is considered to be a follower and successor of Agust Comte. Durkheim had proved in the 'Theory of Suicide' that suicide is a social phenomenon. 'Division of Labour Society', 'The Rules of Sociological Methods, Education and Sociology' etc. are the major works of Durkheim.



Figure- 22.3 Emile Durkheim

Max Weber (1864-1920 AD)- Max Weber was born on April 21, 1864, in a Persian family of **Erfurt** (Germany). Weber was the eldest of his seven brothers. Weber was more interested in books than playing. Weber had obtained secondary



Figure- 22.4 Max Weber

education in language, history, and literature, as well as began to take up jobs in the military. He was highly influenced by the ideas of Gothe, Spinoza and Kant. Weber worked as professor of economics from 1894-96 AD, but due to ill health, he left this job and went to Rome. In 1919, he was again appointed as professor of economics. Max Weber's major works are The Religion of China, The Religion of India, and General Economic History etc.

Sages and sociologists who are the pioneers of ancient India- Since ancient times, our sages have been at the forefront of the tradition of social thoughts in India. The idealistic concept of human society and the interpretation of sociological principles have become evident in many places in Vedic literature. Many cultures may have existed in the world, but their creation has been possible only through Vedic culture. The basic concept of social development - equality, freedom and fraternity - the whole concept of equality, freedom and fraternity is explained in the Samanasya Sukta (10.91) of rigveda - समानी वः आकूतिः समाना हृदयानि वः। समानमस्तु वो मनो यथा वः सुसहासति ॥ (10.91.4) That is, everyone's heart and mind should be the same and there should be no differences.

A large human group made up of communities of more than one person is called society, in which all people together perform human activities. Under the subject of sociology, scientific study of social activities is done. The rules, laws and provisions prescribed by the Vedas regulating society have been codified in memories. Therefore, memories can be called the standard composition of the oldest sociology and memories can undoubtedly be called sociologists. The main purpose of the memories is to lead human life towards immortality by clearly preaching the path prescribed in the Vedas and leading human life smoothly with, duties and responsibilities. The memories clearly lay down the duties of varnashrams along with definite rules and statutes to regulate the daily conduct, manners and customs of people and their communities. In the memories, along with preaching various tasks from birth to death, some tasks have also been banned.

In chronological order, laws, prohibitions, praiseworthy duties, condemned acts are directed in memories according to the social environment. The environment and necessary rules of Indian society have been changing from time to time to protect against invaders and their cultural attacks. The memorialists have given detailed instructions to all sections of people regarding duties, responsibilities and achievements in their lives according to time and circumstances. The new memories have been compiled by sages from different eras and diverse regions of India.

The memorabilia include the right to Vedic religion, the beginning of knowledge, the rules of brahmachari, dantadhavan and bathing method, sandhya, pranayama-chanting, study time, rest time, duties of the householder, rituals like upanayana, marriage, panchamahaYajna, loka main Details of deities worship, etc., rules of food, sin and atonement, deity-fatherhood, authority to perform shradh, ashoch kaal, shradh, vanaprastha and sanyasa rules etc. as well as duties of administrators, means of livelihood, trade, division of property Rules related to behavior, etc. have been mentioned.

Religion is the basis of life in prapancha. Religion teaches the individual and society discipline along with the entire humanity. There is a directive in the Vedas that the basis of the world is religion. If the foundation of religion is shaken, then the superstructure of human life and society will also be shaken and happiness, peace, prosperity can end.

Eminent souvenirs (sociologists) of ancient India- There have been various memoirists in India from time to time and their memories have been named after those souvenirs (sociologists). Manu, Narada, Yajnavalkya and Parashar are the most famous among the souvenirs (sociologists) and law-makers. The social laws created by them are the backbone of the Indian social system. Therefore, Manusmriti (human theology), Yajnavalkya Smriti and Parashar Smriti are the major smriti texts. Manusmriti and Yajnavalkya Smriti are currently universally accepted as official works all over India. Yajnavalkya Smriti is especially consulted for official work and adjudication in all matters of Hindu law. Apart from these, other fifteen smritikars- Vishnu, Daksha, Samvarta, Vyasa, Harita, Shaatatap, Vasishtha, Yama, Apastamba, Gautama, Deval, Shankh, Ushna, There are atri and shaunak. Manuscripts and printed books of the memoirs of these memorials are obtained. Even at present, many sociological topics are dealt with in theology essays like memory, memory and decision-taking. Apart from these, Bhishma Pitamah, Mahatma Vidur has been a famous thinker and sociologist of Mahabharata. In the Bhishma festival, Pitamah Bhishma's teachings to Yudhishtira, Vidur Niti, Narada Smriti, as well as dharmasutras, grihya sutras, shrutasutras composed by Bodhayana, Apastamba and Katyayan sages, have social classical ideas.

Manu- Manu's position is highest among the social scientists of the world. A great knowledgeable, versatile Manu is considered the world's first social policy maker. P.V. Kane's famous work 'History of Theology' says about Manu that Manu is the father of mankind. They come in the tradition of Manas sons of Brahma. The saints born from Manu have been called human beings, 'human beings are the subjects'. Manu was the first to develop the Yajna tradition in India. In the peace festival of Mahabharata, Manu is called Swayambhu Manu, Prachetas Manu etc. According to Narada Smriti, Manu composed the Manav Dharmasutra (human theology). Manusmriti has a total of 12 chapters and 2684 verses. Louis Jacolliot's book The Bible in India - Hindu Origin of Hebrew and Christian Revelation mentions that "Manusmriti is the cornerstone upon which



the Egyptian, Persian, Grecian and Roman legal codes were built." Manu's influence can be experienced in Europe even at present. Manusmriti is counted among such texts of the world, from which human beings have received inspiration for personal conduct and society building. Manusmriti is an encyclopedia of the Indian Code of Conduct, which mentions the origin of creation, rites, routine and routine deeds, ashrams, varnas, rajdharma and atonement etc. Manusmriti describes the entire social system from personal purification, which still guides us today. Manu mentions in his book the high place of women in society, never mourning, always keeping happy and giving special rights in property - यत्र नार्यस्तु पूज्यन्ते रमन्ते तत्र देवतां । यत्रेतास्तु न पूज्यन्ते सर्वास्तत्राफलाः क्रियाः ॥ न शोचन्ति जामयो यत्र विनश्यत्याशु तत्कुलम् । न शोचन्ति तु यत्रैता वर्धते तद्धि सर्वदा ॥ जामयो यानि गेहानि शपन्त्यप्रतिपूजिता । तानि कृत्याह्वतानीव विनश्यन्ति समन्ततः ॥ तस्मादेताः सदा पूज्या भूषणाच्छादनाशनैः । भूतिकामैर्नैरित्यं सत्कारेषून्सवेषु च ॥ सन्तुष्टो भार्या भर्ता भ्रात्रा भार्या तथैव च । यस्मिन्नेव कुले नित्यं कल्याणं तत्र वै ध्रुवम् ॥ (3.56-60) । मनु ने राज्य के कुशल सञ्चालन के लिए सर्वप्रथम सप्तांग सिद्धान्त का प्रतिपादन किया गया था- स्वाम्यमात्यौ पुरं राष्ट्रं कोशदण्डौ सुहृत्तथा । सप्त प्रकृतयो ह्योताः सप्ताङ्गं राज्यं मुच्यते ॥ (9.294) That is, there are seven parts of king, minister, man, nation, treasury, punishment and friendly state. These seven organs are the seven natures of the state body. In the absence of these, it is difficult to imagine the state's operation.

Yajnavalkya- Yajnavalkya was a sage and philosopher as well as a sociologist. Yajnavalkya was a disciple of Acharya Vaishampayan and guru of King Janak. In the scriptures, they have also been called 'Vassaneya'. Yajnavalkya is also considered to be the originator of the theory of 'Neti Neti' (not this, not even this). Rahul Sanskritayan mentions in his book "Volga se Ganga" that Yajnavalkya and Javali had worked to develop the Upanishads and establish them in society. Yajnavalkya's major works are 'Yajnavalkya Smriti' and 'Yajnavalkya Shiksha'. Vishnyeshwar's Mitakshara commentary on Yajnavalkya Smriti is used as evidence in Indian courts.

Narada- Narada is the son of Brahmaji. In the scriptures, Narada is called the mind of God. Narada has an important place in all sections of the society. From time to time, everyone has consulted him. Accepting the importance of Narada, Lord Krishna has said Shrimad Bhagavad Gita- देवर्षीणाम् च नारदः । (10.16) among the devarishis, I am Narada. In the fifth chapter of the Mahabharata, mentioning the personality of Narada ji, it has been said that Devarshi Narada is a scholar of Vedas, Upanishads, history and Puranas, Trikaljna (who knows past, present and future), philosopher of justice and religion, education, grammar, Ayurveda, great scholar of astrology, music-expert, those who solve the doubts of the great scholars, know the reality of dharma-artha-kama-moksha. Narada's major works are Narada Pancharatra and Narada Smriti. Narada Smriti mentions social functioning such as justice, lending, co-operative approach, dattapradnik, upanidhi (bail), abhyupetya-ashushrasha (breaking the service contract), payouts and unemployment (non-payment of salary) etc.

Development of modern sociology in India- The development of sociology in modern India has been divided into three phases - the time of the first phase is considered to be from 1769 AD to 1900 AD. The establishment of the Asiatic Society of Bengal by William Jones in 1774 AD is considered to be the earliest form of sociology in India. The time of the second phase is considered to be from 1901 AD to 1950 AD. The first Department of Sociology in India was established in the University of Mumbai (1914 AD). In Lucknow, Radhakamal Mukherjee became a professor of sociology and economics. The Department of Sociology was started in the University of Pune under the chairmanship of Irvati Karve. In 1969, the 'Indian Council of Social Science Research' was established. Indian scholars came in contact with scholars from other countries of the world, after which the field of publication and research increased.

Prominent Modern Indian Sociological Thinkers-

Govind Sadashiv Ghurye (1893-1983 AD)- He was born on December 12, 1893, in Malvan (Maharashtra). Ghurye studied Marathi, English and Sanskrit languages. He was given a scholarship by the University of Mumbai to study sociology and was sent to study abroad. Ghurye's major works are 'Cast and Race in India', 'Indian Sadhus', 'Cities and Civilizations', 'Indian Costumes'.



Figure- 22.5 Govind Sadashiv Ghurye

Dhurjit Prasad Mukherjee (1894-1961 AD)- Dhurjit Prasad Mukherjee was born on October 5, 1894, in West Bengal. Mukherjee was a renowned professor and socialist thinker. Professor Mukherjee has considered the social system of India as its decisive and special characteristic. According to them, there is an abundance of sociality in India. In fact, the excess of sociality is the specialty of India. Mukherjee laid special emphasis on knowing social traditions and changes. According to Dhurjit Prasad Mukherjee, traditions mean the transfer of the

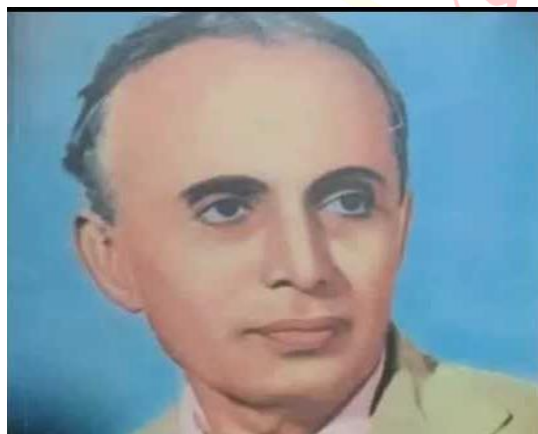


Figure- 22.6 Akshay Ramanlal Desai

practices, customs, rites and ideas of the society from one generation to another. Traditions are the main theme of Indian sociology. The main principles that bring about change in Indian traditions are Shruti, Smriti and Anubhav. Modern India Culture and Basic Concept of Sociology are his major works.

Akshay Ramanlal Desai (1915-1994 AD)- Akshay Ramanlal Desai was born on April 26, 1915, in Nadiad (Gujarat). In 1951, he was appointed to the Department of

Sociology at the University of Bombay. Akshay Ramanlal Desai's major works are 'Social Background of Indian Nationalism' and 'Rural Sociology in India'. Desai had done more work on the peasant movement and rural sociology, modernization, urban issues, political sociology, nature of the state and human rights etc. Desai had said about the public welfare state that the public welfare state is a positive state and its economy is mixed.

M.N. Srinivas (1916-1999 AD)- Mysore Narasimhachar Srinivas was born on November 16, 1916 in Mysore (Karnataka).

After his early education in Mysore, he went to Mumbai for post-graduation, where Ghuriye was his guru. In 1951, he was appointed professor in Baroda. He wrote on subjects such as caste and caste system, social stratification, culturalization and westernization in Indian villages, South India. His major works are Marriage and Family in Mysore, Village Caste Gender and Method etc. He received two doctorates from Bombay University and Oxford University. In Indian sociology, he made rural studies influential. The articles written by him on villages are of two types - first, the ethnography of the field work done in the villages and the discussion on these details and second, how Indian villages function as a unit of social analysis.

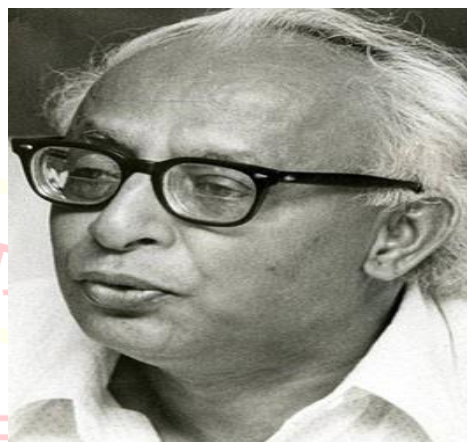


Figure- 22.7 M.N. Srinivas

Question

Multiple Choice Questions-

1. Book titled "Caste and Religion in India" was-
 A. D.P. Mukherjee
 C.G.S. Ghuraye
 B.M.N. Srinivas
 D.S.C. Dubey
2. Is called father of Sociology-
 A. August Comte
 C. Max Weber
 B. Charles Coole
 D. Karl Marx
3. The First Policy maker of the world is-
 A. Narad to
 C. Shukracharya to
 B. Manu to
 D. Agni
4. Gave the theory of class struggle-
 A. Max Weber
 C. Karl Marx
 B. Emil Durkheim
 D. Spinoza

Fill in the blanks-

1. Are the called children of the age of reqw volution? (Sociology/Philosophy)
2. B.N. Srinivas was born in.....the province

(Karnataka/Kerala)



-
3. In India, The Sociology Department was first established in.....
(University of Pune/University of Mumbai)
 4. Narada is blessed with Brahmaji. He is considered a son of.....
(Manas/Manas) auras)

Write the true/false-

1. At the time of the French Revolution, Louis 16 was the ruler of France. True/False
2. Kautilya's economics provides information about sociology in India. True/False
3. Karl Marx is called the father of sociology. True/False
4. Manu is the highest among the social scientists of the world. True/False

Match the pair correctly-

- | | |
|----------------------------|----------------|
| 1. Das Capital | A. Babbar |
| 2. Education and Sociology | B. Karl Marx |
| 3. Religion of India | C. Yajnavalkya |
| 4. Yajnavalkya Shiksha | D. Durkheim |

Very short answer questions-

1. What are the major works of Karl Marx?
2. What do you mean by 'Enlightenment'?
3. When and where was Max Weber born?
4. Yajnavalkya was a contemporary of which king?
5. In which university of India, the subject of Sociology was first introduced?

Short Answer Questions-

1. The development of sociology in India is divided into which stages?
2. Write down D.P. Mukherjee's thoughts on Indian traditions.
3. Describe the 'Class-Conflict Theory'.
4. Introduce Emil Durkheim.
5. Explain the subject of Narada smriti.

Long Answer Questions-

1. Explain in detail the beginning of sociology as a subject in India.
2. Explain Manu's social views.

Project Work-

1. Write a short essay about two Indian social thinkers.

Chapter-23

Present Indian Education System

In this chapter- The present form of education, the main qualities of the Indian modern education system, the major defects of the Indian modern education system, National Education Policy 2020 AD.

India has been a major centre of world education since ancient times. India is therefore called Vishwa Guru. In the past we had both formal and informal educational centres. The centres of formal education included monasteries, temples, ashrams and gurukuls. Besides, informal education was given through family, priests, pandits, monks and festival events etc. Educational institutions were established in the social development process. Gurukuls were often held in forests, groves, villages and towns. Ashrams of sages like Valmiki, Sandeepani, and Kanva etc. were located in the forests. Along with the Vedas, philosophy, grammar, astrology, history and sociology were also studied here. In ancient times, Takshashila, Nalanda, Kanyakubja (Kannauj), Dhara, Tanjore, Kashi, Karnataka, Nashik etc. were famous centers of education. Now the education has become a profession, the western education system has intended our traditional education system.

The present form of education- The present education system of India is based on the British model, which was implemented by Lord Macaulay in 1835

Table 23.1	
Name And Chairman Of The Commission	Year Of Establishment
University Education Commission - Dr. Radhakrishnan	1948 AD
Secondary Education Commission- Laxman Swami Mudaliar	1952 AD
Secondary Education Commission- Daulat Singh Kothari	1964 AD
First Sanskrit Education Commission - Suniti Kumar Chatterjee	1956 AD
Second Sanskrit Education Commission - Satyavrat Shastri	2014 AD

AD. At that time, Lord Macaulay had clearly stated that the purpose of English education was to play the role of middlemen for administration in India and to prepare specific sections in India for government work. In 1968, the first National Education Policy was implemented in the country. In this education policy, the

purpose of education was to make students ideal citizens of the country by making them development. The second education policy in India was implemented in 1986 AD, which is called 10 +2 + 3 education system. Today, we see that the present education system has been **digitized**. Classroom teaching has become highly interactive with the use of PPT, presentations, e-learning methods,



practice demos, online training and other digital methods or platforms in digital learning.

Merits of Indian modern education system-

1. **Mental and Intellectual Development-** Education is an important means of mental and intellectual development of a person. Through this, new ideas are created in the person. Education helps in the overall development of personality. Education creates feelings of kindness, love, compassion, faith and abandonment, nationalism, bondage in a person. Through this, he connects with his traditions, ideals and life values. Through education, a person develops thinking, reasoning and scientific methods.
2. **Understanding of political and social rules** - Education makes a person perfect, which creates new ideas in the mind of a person and he contributes to the society and the nation. Just as no state can run without rules and regulations, no society can run without rules. Rules serve as the backbone of society. Therefore, it can be said that education plays an important role in understanding political and social rules.
3. **Development of logical power-** Logical power or logical thinking is a mental process. Education is the medium that creates logical power in human beings. This strengthens the mental strength of human beings. The ability to present an argument on a question or problem in a person is developed through education.
4. The main purpose of education is the character and personality development of the person. This leads to the development of self-confidence in the person. It has been told in the Upanishads that without education, human beings are considered equal to animals.
5. **Education based on social equality-** for the development of social harmony, modern education has provided that no person of the society is deprived of education. The meaning is that everyone has the right to education without any discrimination.
6. **Multi-dimensional education system-** Nowadays, multi-media (multimedia) education is prevalent, in which audio-visual materials are used. This is a reasonable step, but at the same time, the diversity of interest of the student has to be kept in mind.

Demerits of modern Indian education system- The education system we have adopted today is only related to bookish knowledge. The biggest drawback of this education system is that the student's goal is only to get a degree. The main drawbacks of modern Indian education system are as follows:

1. **Commercialization-** In the present education system, education has become commercialized. With the modernization of education, our sanatani culture has disappeared. Along with the child, the parents are also interviewed at the time of admission. The sole aim of private sector institutions is to gain economic benefits and achieve high creditworthiness. For this, the managers of educational institutions offer various types of advertisements, many types



-
- of physical attractions such as swimming, riding, etc. Most schools have external appearances and internal hollowness, with a few exceptions.
2. **Lack of creativity-** One of the drawbacks of the present education system is that it lacks creativity. Children have to read huge courses in small classes, which makes them find this study dull. In this age of competition, the child's childhood has been lost. The only mentality of parents is that their children should study and become a doctor-engineer, even if they do not have an intellectual level and interest in it. We need to increase the creativity and creativity of children by making new experiments in education.
 3. **Unused Education System-** The present education system often lacks a plurality of theoretical knowledge and practical knowledge. Children need practical knowledge along with theoretical education. Mahatma Gandhi's basic education is very important and valuable. Any education can become effective only when it is practical and basic. Children are given so much homework in schools and tuitions that they experience physical and mental fatigue, due to which they do not feel like studying.
 4. **Non-holistic education-** Non-formal education means incompleteness of education. Even if about one-third of the learner's life is spent in getting education in various subjects, he is not able to master the subject. Therefore, it is the main drawback of the present education system.
 5. **Urbanization of Education-** Today educational institutions are moving away from secluded places, forests and natural places. Education has become very expensive due to the centralization of higher educational institutions in big cities. After studying in these cities, students get jobs and start living there. Thus, people are slowly forgetting the rural culture.
 6. **Examination system-** In the present education system, the examination system is also not completely suitable. The present examination system is incapable of comprehensively examining personality. The student succeeds in the examination using guides, keys, possible quizzes, this only leads to the loss of his personality.

National Education Policy 2020- To correct the defects of modern education system, 'National Education Policy 2020' has been implemented recently in the country on 29 July 2020. This is the first change since the Indian Education Policy released in 1986. For this, the government had constituted a committee of experts under the chairmanship of former ISRO chief K. Kasturirangan (in 2017). A new draft of education was prepared by this committee, which has been approved by the Cabinet (Cabinet) of the Government of India under the Chairmanship of Prime Minister Shri Narendra Modi. Many changes have been made in this policy from Anganwadi, school education to higher education.

Key provisions of National Education Policy 2020- In the National Education Policy 2020, children will be given education in mother tongue, local language or regional language up to fifth grade. It can also be extended to class eight later.



- The new curriculum structure of 5+3+3+4 will now be implemented in place of the old structure 10+2+3 of the school curriculum. Which are for children aged 3–8, 8–11, 11–14 and 14–18 respectively. It provides for inclusion of children in the age group of 3-6 Years, who have been kept away so far, under the school curriculum, which has been recognized as an important stage for the mental development of the child globally.
- In the National Education System, there will be 12 Years of school education with pre-schooling (three Years of Anganwadi). Under this, 3 Years of pre-primary and first and second classes have been kept for the initial stage of children. In the next stage, classes 3, 4 and 5 have been placed. After this, middle school i.e. classes 6-8 and finally secondary level i.e. classes 9-12 have been kept.
- The Ministry of Human Resource Development has been renamed as the Ministry of Education.
- The Scope of The Right to Education Act has been widened in the National Education Policy 2020. Now 18 Years of age children will be brought under the Right to Education Act, 2009.
- In this education policy, emphasis has been laid on developing life skills and necessary abilities in children.
- By the year 2030, the target of education for all has been set at the secondary level with 100 percent GER (Gross Enrolment Ratio) in school education.
- Considering basic literacy and attainment of numeracy knowledge as the most important and first requirement for learning correctly, special emphasis has been laid in NEP-2020.
- NCERT will develop a national curriculum and educational framework for early childhood care and education for children up to the age of 8 Years.
- There will be no special distinction between academic streams, extra-curricular activities and vocational education in schools.
- Special emphasis will be laid on the education of socially and economically disadvantaged groups.
- The target is to spend 6 percent of GDP on education, which is currently 4.43 percent.
- Vocational courses will be started from class 6. For this, interested students will be given internship from class 6 onwards. In addition, to promote music, yoga, craft, sports, community service and art education, these will be included in the curriculum.
- Higher education institutions will have to bring more transparency in terms of fees.
- The e-courses will be developed in regional languages. Virtual labs are being developed and a National Education Technology Forum (NETF) is being created.



- Promotion of Indian art and culture is important not only for the nation but also for individuals. Therefore, key abilities such as cultural awareness and expression will be developed in children to instill a sense of self-identity and belonging and appreciation for other cultures and identities.
- India is a rich repository of culture that was developed over thousands of Years. This cultural property of India will be preserved, promoted and disseminated.
- Indigenous and traditional methods of tribal knowledge use and learning will be included in education and the knowledge available in the Indian knowledge system is mathematics, astronomy, yoga, philosophy, architecture, medicine, agriculture, engineering, linguistics, literature, sports as well as governance, polity. Subjects like conservation etc. will also be included in the education.
- Students will be taught the importance of doing what is right at an early age and a logical framework will be developed for ethical decision making.
- Due to the large and significant contribution of Sanskrit language and the literary, cultural importance, scientific nature of various disciplines and subjects, Sanskrit will not be limited to Sanskrit schools and universities only and it will be brought into the mainstream. Emphasis will also be laid on creating textbooks in simple standard Sanskrit.
- Sanskrit will be presented as an important enriching option for students at all levels of school and higher education with a mainstream choice of three-language.

Under the New Education Policy 2020, a comprehensive approach to education has been presented. In this education policy, efforts have been made to make our ancient education system moral instead of materialistic by adjusting the features. This education system focuses on the overall development of the individual. Various commissions constituted by the Government of India for the development of education

Question

Multiple Choice Questions-

1. 'National Education Policy 2020' was implemented in India on-
 A. 29 June 2020
 B. 29th July 2020
 C. 29 August 2020
 D. 29th September 2020
2. Development of the child's overall personality depends on-
 A. Better habits
 B. sports
 C. Education
 D. From all of the above
3. is the father of Modern Education system in India-
 A. Lord Bentinck
 B. Lord Dalhousie
 C. Lord Cornwallis
 D. Lord Macaulay
4. First education policy in India after independence was implemented in-
 A. 1968 A.D.
 B. 1969 AD.
 C. 1949 AD.
 D. 1958 AD.



Fill in the blanks-

1. India is known as..... (Mahashakti/Vishwa Guru)
2. Was the ancient education in India (Takshashila/Nashik?)
3. The New National Education Policy was implemented on..... (29 July 2020/29 July 2021)
4. The First University Education Commission Chairman was.....
(Dr. Radhakrishnan/Abdul Kalam)

Write the true/false-

1. The Indian education system is based on the American model. True/False
2. K. Kasturirangan was the chairman of the committee formed to draft the National Education Policy. True/False
3. Digital learning includes PPT, video presentations, e-learning methods, etc. True/False
4. N.E.P. In 2020, e-courses will be developed in regional languages. True/False

Match the pair correctly-

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|---------|
| 1. First National Education Policy | A. 2020 |
| 2. National Education Policy 2020 | B. 2009 |
| 3. Right to Education Act. | C. 1968 |
| 4. 2nd Sanskrit Education Commission | D. 2014 |

Very short answer questions-

1. What do you mean by digitization of education?
2. Name the five centres of learning in ancient India.
3. By what name was the Ministry of Education known till 2020?
4. What are the three defects of the current education system?
5. What percentage of GDP will be spent on education in The National Education Policy 2020?

Short Answer Questions-

1. According to Lord Macaulay, what were the objectives of education in India?
2. What do you understand by formal and informal education?
3. What do you understand by commercialization of education?
4. Explain the importance of traditional education in the New Education Policy 2020.

Long answer question-

1. Write down the key provisions of the National Education Policy 2020.
2. Discuss the main merits and demerits of the modern Indian education system.

Project-

1. List the major provisions of the National Education Policy 2020.



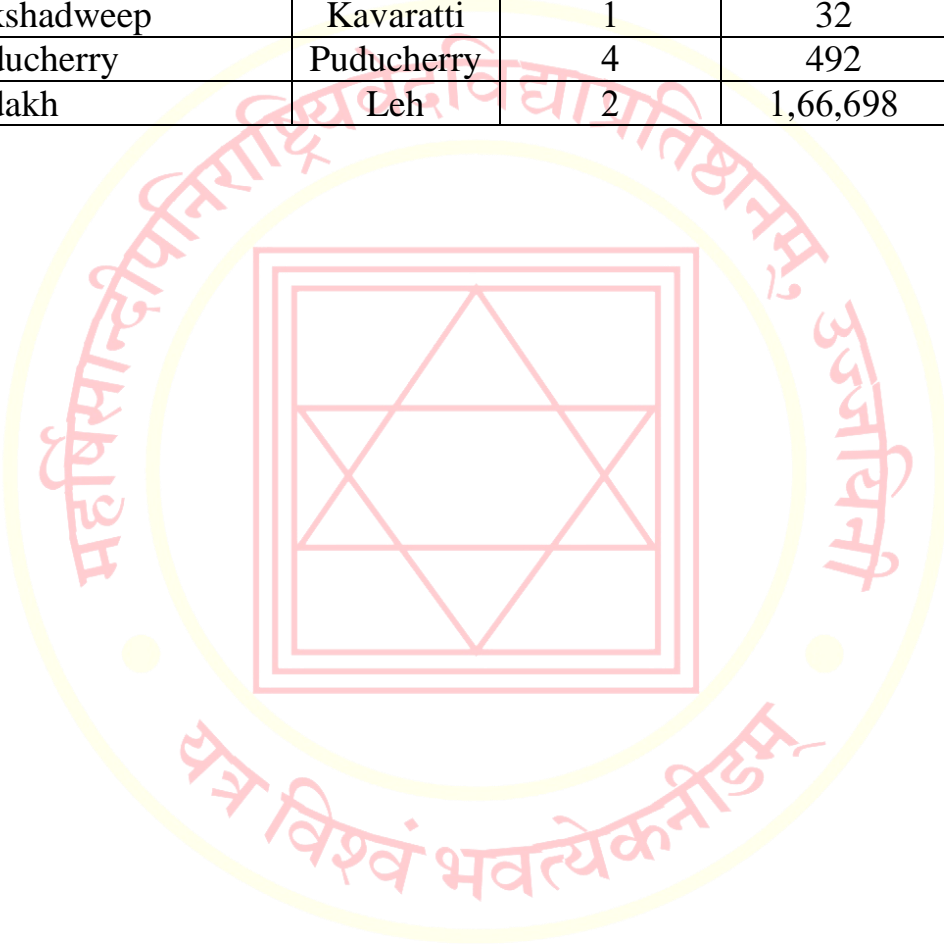
Appendix

States, their capitals, number of districts, area and population

Sl.No.	State	Capital	Number Of Districts	Area Sq.Km. In	Population
1.	Andhra Pradesh	Hyderabad	26	2,75,060	8,46,53,533
2.	Arunachal Pradesh	Itanagar	19	83,743	13,82,611
3.	Assam	Dispur	35	78,438	3,11,69,272
4.	A State In Eastern India	Patna	38	94,163	10,38,04,637
5.	Chhattisgarh	Raipur	32	1,36,034	2,55,40,196
6.	Goa	Panaji	02	3,702	14,57,723
7.	Gujarat	Gandhi Nagar	35	1,96,024	6,03,83,628
8.	Haryana	Chandigarh	22	44,212	2,53,53,081
9.	Himachal Pradesh	Shimla	12	55,673	68,56,509
10.	Jharkhand	Ranchi	24	79,714	3,29,66,238
11.	Karnataka	Bangalore	30	1,91,791	6,11,30,704
12.	Kerala	Thiruvananthapuram	14	38,863	3,33,87,677
13.	Madhya Pradesh	Bhopal	50	3,08,000	7,25,97,565
14.	Maharashtra	Mumbai	36	3,07,713	11,23,72,972
15.	Manipur	Imphal	09	22,327	27,21,756
16.	Meghalaya	Shillong	11	22,327	29,64,007
17.	Mizoram	Aizawl	08	21,081	10,91,014
18.	Nagaland	Kohima	12	16,579	19,80,602
19.	Odisha	Bhubaneswar	30	1,55,707	4,19,47,358
20.	Punjab	Chandigarh	23	50,362	2,77,04,236
21.	Rajasthan	Jaipur	33	3,42,239	6,86,21,012
22.	Sikkim	Gangtok	04	7,096	6,07,688
23.	Tamil Nadu	Chennai	38	1,30,058	7,21,38,958
24.	Tripura	Agartala	08	10,49,169	36,71,032
25.	Uttarakhand	Dehradun	13	53,484	1,01,16,752
26.	Uttar Pradesh	Lucknow	75	2,38,566	19,95,81,477
27.	West Bengal	Kolkata	23	88,752	9,13,47,736
28.	Telangana	Hyderabad	33	1,14,840	3,51,93,978



Sl. No.	Union Territory	Capital	Number Of Districts	Area Sq.Km. In	Population
1.	Andaman And Nicobar Islands	Port Blair	3	8,249	3,79,944
2.	Chandigarh	Chandigarh	1	114	10,54,686
3.	Dadar And Nagar Haveli Daman And Diu	Suppression	3	603	5,85,764
4.	Jammu And Kashmir	Srinagar	20	2,22,236	1,25,00,000
5.	National Capital Territory Of Delhi	Delhi	9	1,483	1,67,53,235
6.	Lakshadweep	Kavaratti	1	32	64,429
7.	Puducherry	Puducherry	4	492	12,44,464
8.	Ladakh	Leh	2	1,66,698	2,74,289



सामाजिक विज्ञान/Soc. Science RVVP/24/11-5	वेदविभूषण प्रथम-वर्ष परीक्षा / Vedavibhushan First Year कक्षा 11वीं / उत्तर मध्यमा - I / Class 11 th / Uttar Madhyama - I	Model Paper - A
--	---	-----------------

आदर्श प्रश्नपत्र / Model Q. Paper : I/23-24/ सामाजिक विज्ञान /

वेदविभूषण प्रथम-वर्ष / Vedavibhushan First Year/
कक्षा 11वीं / उत्तर मध्यमा - I/ Class 11th / Uttar Madhyama - I
वर्ष / Year 2023-24

विषय- सामाजिक विज्ञान/Soc. Science

पूर्णांक/M.M. – 100

समय/Time – 3 घण्टे

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> सभी प्रश्न हल करना अनिवार्य हैं। सभी प्रश्न के उत्तर पेपर में यथास्थान पर ही लिखें। इस प्रश्न पत्र में कुल 39 प्रश्न हैं, प्रत्येक प्रश्न के सामने निर्धारित अंक दिये गये हैं। उत्तीर्णता हेतु न्यूनतम 40% अंक निर्धारित हैं। आदर्श प्रश्न पत्र का छात्रों को लिखित परीक्षा हेतु अभ्यास कराएँ। 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> It is mandatory to attempt all the questions. Write down the answers at the appropriate places provided. This question paper contains 39 questions. Marks for each question are shown on the side. The minimum pass marks are 40%. The model question paper should be used by the students for written examination practice.
--	--

बहुविकल्पीय प्रश्न -

1 × 10 = 10

Multiple Choice Questions -

1. अमरकोष में पृथिवी के कितने नाम बताये गये हैं?

How many names of the earth have been mentioned in Amarkosh?

अ. 13

ब. 22

स. 27

द. 33

2. ब्रह्माण्ड के विस्तार से सम्बन्धित महाविस्फोट (बिग बैंग) की घटना घटित मानी जाती है-

The event of Big Bang related to the expansion of the universe is believed to have happened-

अ. लगभग 13.7 अरब वर्ष पूर्व

ब. लगभग 5.7 अरब वर्ष पूर्व

About 13.7 billion years ago

About 5.7 billion years ago

स. लगभग 7.7 अरब वर्ष पूर्व

द. लगभग 3.7 अरब वर्ष पूर्व

About 7.7 billion years ago

About 3.7 billion years ago

3. भूकम्प का अध्ययन करने वाले विषय को कहते हैं-

The subject which studies earthquakes is called-

अ. जियोलॉजी

ब. सिस्मोलॉजी

Geology

Seismology

स. एन्थ्रोपॉलजी

द. एनाटोमी

Anthropology

Anatomy

	1	वर्ष/Year - 2023-24
--	---	---------------------

सामाजिक विज्ञान/Soc. Science RVVP/24/11-5	वेदविभूषण प्रथम-वर्ष परीक्षा / Vedavibhushan First Year कक्षा 11वीं / उत्तर मध्यमा - I / Class 11 th / Uttar Madhyama -I	Model Paper - A
--	--	-----------------

4. 'महाद्वीपीय विस्थापन सिद्धान्त' दिया है-
'Continental Drift Theory' is given by-
- | | |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| अ. अल्फ्रेड वेगनर
Alfred Wegener | ब. सी. हर्षल
C. Harshal |
| स. इरेटास्थनीज
Eratosthenes | द. अरस्तू
Aristotle |
5. 'उभौ समुद्रावा क्षेति यश्च पूर्व उतापरः.....।' मन्त्रांश ऋग्वेद में है-
'Ubhau Samudrava Ksheti Yascha Purva Utaar:' The mantransh is in Rigveda-
- | | |
|----------|-------------|
| अ. 2.5.4 | ब. 10.136.5 |
| स. 5.3.6 | द. 8.7.9 |
6. रोम में राजतन्त्र की स्थापना हुई थी-
Monarchy was established in Rome-
- | | |
|----------------------|------------------------|
| अ. 27 ई.पू.
27 BC | ब. 100 ई.पू.
100 BC |
| स. 27 ई.
27 AD | द. 50 ई.
50 AD |
7. चीन में पहली बार गणतन्त्र की घोषणा हुई थी-
Republic was declared for the first time in China-
- | | |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| अ. 1122 ई.
1122 AD | ब. 1526 ई.
1526 AD |
| स. 1791 ई.
1791 AD | द. 1911 ई.
1911 AD |
8. कंदरिया महादेव मन्दिर स्थित है-
Kandariya Mahadev Temple is situated in-
- | | |
|---------------------|-------------------------|
| अ. उज्जैन
Ujjain | ब. खजुराहो
Khajuraho |
| स. मैहर
Maihar | द. देवास
Dewas |

सामाजिक विज्ञान/Soc. Science RVVP/24/11-5	वेदविभूषण प्रथम-वर्ष परीक्षा / Vedavibhushan First Year कक्षा 11वी / उत्तर मध्यमा - I / Class 11 th / Uttar Madhyama -I	Model Paper - A
--	---	-----------------

9. भारतीय संविधान की शक्ति का स्रोत है-

The source of power of the Indian Constitution is-

- | | |
|--|------------------------------------|
| अ. स्थानीय सरकार
Local government | ब. राज्य सरकार
State government |
| स. केन्द्र सरकार
Central Government | द. जनता
Public |

10. राज्यों में उच्च न्यायालय के गठन से सम्बन्धित अनुच्छेद है-

The article related to the constitution of the High Court in the states is-

- | | |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| अ. अनुच्छेद 124
Article 124 | ब. अनुच्छेद 130
Article 130 |
| स. अनुच्छेद 214
Article 214 | द. अनुच्छेद 219
Article 219 |

रिक्त स्थान की पूर्ति कीजिए -

2 × 5 = 10

Fill in the blanks -

11. वायु मण्डल की सबसे निचली परत हैं।

The lowest layer of the atmosphere is

12. मन्दिरों का नगर को कहा जाता है।

The city of temples is called

13. उत्तर मीमांसा के प्रवर्तक हैं।

The originator of Uttara Mimamsa is

14. देश का सबसे बड़ा अपीलीय न्यायालय है।

The highest appellate court of the country is

15. ग्रामीण क्षेत्रों में रोजगार के स्रोत हैं।

The sources of employment in rural areas are

सामाजिक विज्ञान/Soc. Science RVVP/24/11-5	वेदविभूषण प्रथम-वर्ष परीक्षा / Vedavibhushan First Year कक्षा 11वीं / उत्तर मध्यमा - I / Class 11 th / Uttar Madhyama -I	Model Paper - A
--	--	-----------------

16. सत्य/असत्य कथन-

5 × 2 = 10

True/False statement –

नोट- नीचे पाँच कथन दिए गए हैं। उन कथनों को पढ़कर कथनों के दाहिनी ओर अंकित कोष्ठकों में सत्य या असत्य लिखिए।

Note- Five statements are given below. Read the statements and write true or false in the brackets provided on the right side of the statements.

- A. पृथिवी को महाभारत के शान्ति पर्व में पद्यम् रूपा बताया गया है। ()
The Earth has been described as Padyam Rupa in Shanti Parva of Mahabharata.
- B. राजराजेश्वर मन्दिर का निर्माण चोल शासक राजराज प्रथम ने करवाया था। ()
The Rajarajeshwar temple was built by the Chola ruler Rajaraja I.
- C. कारगिल विजय दिवस 26 जुलाई को मनाया जाता है। ()
Kargil Vijay Diwas is observed on 26 July.
- iv. 1998 में भारत सरकार ने ग्रेट लीप फॉरवर्ड अभियान शुरू किया था। ()
In 1998, the Government of India started the Great Leap Forward campaign.
- v. ग्रीनहाउस प्रभाव के कारण पृथ्वी पर जीवन सम्भव है। ()
Life on earth is possible due to the greenhouse effect.

17. सही जोड़ी मिलान कीजिए -

5 × 1 = 5

Match the correct pair –

नोट- स्तम्भ - 1 को स्तम्भ - 2 से सही जोड़ी मिलान के चार विकल्प (A, B, C, D) नीचे दिये गए हैं। सही विकल्प पर सही (✓) का चिह्न लगाइए।

Note- Four options (A, B, C, D) are given below to match Column-1 with Column-2 correctly. Tick (✓) the correct option.

स्तम्भ - 1 Column - 1	स्तम्भ - 2 Column - 2
i. ऋग्वेद Rigveda	a. 'सप्तद्वीपा वसुमती' 'Saptadvipa Vasumati'
ii. 'सप्त सागर' 'Seven Seas'	b. दक्षिण की गङ्गा South Ganga

सामाजिक विज्ञान/Soc. Science RVVP/24/11-5	वेदविभूषण प्रथम-वर्ष परीक्षा / Vedavibhushan First Year कक्षा 11वीं / उत्तर मध्यमा - I / Class 11 th / Uttar Madhyama -I	Model Paper - A
--	--	-----------------

- | | |
|--|------------------------------------|
| iii. पैंजिया
Pangea | c. 'महत् उल्ब'
'Mahat ulb' |
| iv. महर्षि पतञ्जलि
Maharshi Patanjali | d. अग्नि पुराण
Agni Purana |
| v. गोदावरी नदी
Godavari River | e. पृथिवी का स्थल भाग
Land Area |

- A. i (c), ii (a), iii (b), iv (e), v (d)
- B. i (e), ii (d), iii (b), iv (a), v (c)
- C. i (c), ii (d), iii (e), iv (a), v (b)
- D. i (c), ii (d), iii (b), iv (a), v (d)

18. कथन सम्बन्धी प्रश्न-

5×1=5

Statement related question-

नोट- कथन सम्बन्धी प्रश्न में पाँच प्रश्न हैं। प्रत्येक प्रश्न में दो कथन- A और R दिया गया है। इनसे सम्बन्धित चार विकल्प अ, ब, स, द नीचे दिए गए हैं। सही विकल्प पर (✓) का चिह्न लगाइए।

Note- There are five statement related questions. In each question two statements A and R are given. Four options A, B, C, D are given below related to them. Tick (✓) the correct option.

- i. कथन A - भू-आम को द्विआयामी रूप देने का कार्य लेखाचित्रीय या गणितीय विधा से निर्मित प्रक्षेपण द्वारा ही सम्भव है।

Statement A- The work of giving two-dimensional form to the earth's surface is possible only by the projection made by graphical or mathematical method.

कथन R - मानचित्रण के लिये भूगोलवेत्ता को गणित एवं कला में निपुण होना आवश्यक है।

Statement R- For mapping, it is necessary for the geographer to be proficient in mathematics and art.

- अ. कथन A सही है और कथन R गलत है।

Statement A is correct and statement R is incorrect.

- ब. कथन A और कथन R दोनों गलत हैं।

Both statement A and statement R are wrong.

सामाजिक विज्ञान/Soc. Science RVVP/24/11-5	वेदविभूषण प्रथम-वर्ष परीक्षा / Vedavibhushan First Year कक्षा 11वीं / उत्तर मध्यमा - I / Class 11 th / Uttar Madhyama -I	Model Paper - A
--	--	-----------------

- स. कथन A गलत है और कथन R सही है।
Statement A is false and statement R is correct.
- द. कथन A और कथन R दोनों सही हैं।
Both statement A and statement R are correct.
- ii. कथन A - हमारे सौरमण्डल में पृथिवी एक पार्थिव ग्रह है।
Statement A- Earth is a terrestrial planet in our solar system.
कथन R - क्योंकि पृथिवी की सतह चट्टानों और धातुओं से बनी है।
Statement R - Because the surface of the earth is made up of rocks and metals.
- अ. कथन A सही है और कथन R गलत है।
Statement A is correct and statement R is incorrect.
- ब. कथन A और कथन R दोनों गलत हैं।
Both statement A and statement R are incorrect.
- स. कथन A और कथन R दोनों सही हैं।
Both statement A and statement R are correct.
- द. कथन A गलत और कथन R सही हैं।
Statement A is incorrect and statement R is correct.
- iii. कथन A - पृथ्वी की घूर्णन गति से उत्पन्न अपकेन्द्रीय बल को कोरियालिस बल कहते हैं।
Statement A - The centrifugal force due to the rotation of the earth is called Coriolis force.
कथन R- इस परिवर्तनकारी बल की खोज कॉरिऑलिस ने की थी।
Statement R - This revolutioery force was discovered by Coriolis.
- अ. कथन A सही है और कथन R गलत है।
Statement A is correct and statement R is incorrect.
- ब. कथन A और कथन R दोनों गलत हैं।
Both statement A and statement R are incorrect.
- स. कथन A और कथन R दोनों सही हैं।
Both statement A and statement R are correct.

सामाजिक विज्ञान/Soc. Science RVVP/24/11-5	वेदविभूषण प्रथम-वर्ष परीक्षा / Vedavibhushan First Year कक्षा 11वीं / उत्तर मध्यमा - I / Class 11 th / Uttar Madhyama -I	Model Paper - A
--	--	-----------------

द. कथन A गलत है और कथन R सही है।

Statement A is false and statement R is correct.

- iv. कथन A - लाखों-करोड़ों वर्षों पूर्व जीव-जन्तु एवं पेड़-पौधों के भूमि में दबे अवशेषों को जीवाश्म कहते हैं।

Statement A - The remains of animals and plants buried in the ground millions of years ago are called fossils.

कथन R - मानव के क्रमिक विकास की जानकारी हमें मानव प्रजातियों के प्राप्त जीवाश्मों से मिलती है।

Statement R - We get information about the gradual evaluation of human beings from the fossils of the human species.

अ. कथन A सही है और कथन R गलत है।

Statement A is correct and statement R is incorrect.

ब. कथन A और कथन R दोनों गलत हैं।

Both statement A and statement R are incorrect.

स. कथन A और कथन R दोनों सही हैं।

Both statement A and statement R are correct.

द. कथन A गलत और कथन R सही हैं।

Statement A is false and statement R is correct.

- v. कथन A - वैश्वीकरण एक ऐसी सतत-प्रक्रिया है जिससे सम्पूर्ण संसार के देश एक-दूसरे से आर्थिक, सामाजिक व सांस्कृतिक दृष्टि से आपस में जुड़े रहते हैं।

Statement A - Globalization is a continuous process by which the countries of the whole world remain connected with each other economically, socially and culturally.

कथन R - स्वतन्त्र भारत में वैश्वीकरण का प्रारम्भ 1991 ई. से माना जाता है।

Statement R - Globalization is considered to have started in independent India in 1991 AD.

अ. कथन A सही है और कथन R गलत है।

Statement A is correct and statement R is incorrect.

ब. कथन A और कथन R दोनों गलत हैं।

Both statement A and statement R are incorrect.

सामाजिक विज्ञान/Soc. Science RVVP/24/11-5	वेदविभूषण प्रथम-वर्ष परीक्षा / Vedavibhushan First Year कक्षा 11वी / उत्तर मध्यमा - I / Class 11 th / Uttar Madhyama -I	Model Paper - A
--	---	-----------------

स. कथन A गलत है और कथन R सही है।

Statement A is false and statement R is correct.

द. कथन A और कथन R दोनों सही है।

Both statement A and statement R are correct.

अति लघु उत्तरीय प्रश्न -

10×2=20

Very short answer type questions -

नोट- प्रश्न संख्या 19 से 28 तक के उत्तर पूर्ण वाक्य में देने हैं, नहीं तो अंक काट लिए जाएँगे।

Note- Question numbers 19 to 28 have to be answered in complete sentences, otherwise marks will be deducted.

19. भूगोल में 'क्रमबद्ध उपागम' किसे कहते हैं?

What is called 'gradual approach' in geography?

20. 'सुषुम्णः सूर्यरश्मिश्चन्द्रमा गन्धर्वस्तस्य नक्षत्राण्यप्सरसो भेकुरयो नाम ॥' का अर्थ लिखिए।

Write the meaning of 'सुषुम्णः सूर्यरश्मिश्चन्द्रमा गन्धर्वस्तस्य नक्षत्राण्यप्सरसो भेकुरयो नाम ॥'

21. विष्णु पुराण के अनुसार पृथ्वी की संरचना का उल्लेख कीजिए।

Mention the structure of the earth according to Vishnu Purana.

सामाजिक विज्ञान/Soc. Science RVVP/24/11-5	वेदविभूषण प्रथम-वर्ष परीक्षा / Vedavibhushan First Year कक्षा 11वी / उत्तर मध्यमा - I / Class 11 th / Uttar Madhyama -I	Model Paper - A
--	---	-----------------

22. वेदों में भूकम्प का संकेत करने वाले मन्त्र को अर्थ सहित लिखिए।

Write the mantra indicating earthquake in the Vedas, along with its meaning.

23. किसके नाम पर अमेरिका का नामकरण किया गया?

Who was America named after?

24. जापान में मेंजी वंश की पुनर्स्थापना कब हुई थी?

When was the Menji dynasty restored in Japan?

सामाजिक विज्ञान/Soc. Science RVVP/24/11-5	वेदविभूषण प्रथम-वर्ष परीक्षा / Vedavibhushan First Year कक्षा 11वी / उत्तर मध्यमा - I / Class 11 th / Uttar Madhyama -I	Model Paper - A
--	---	-----------------

25. पुरी के जगन्नाथ मंदिर के विग्रह निर्माण के लिए किस लकड़ी का प्रयोग होता है?

Which wood is used for making the idols of the Jagannath temple at Puri?

26. काञ्ची के 'कैलाशनाथ मन्दिर' का निर्माण कार्य कब और किस शासक ने प्रारम्भ कराया था?

When and which ruler started the construction work of 'Kailashnath Temple' of Kanchi?

27. नई आर्थिक नीति के चार प्रमुख अवयव कौन-कौन से हैं?

What are the four main components of the New Economic Policy?

सामाजिक विज्ञान/Soc. Science RVVP/24/11-5	वेदविभूषण प्रथम-वर्ष परीक्षा / Vedavibhushan First Year कक्षा 11वी / उत्तर मध्यमा - I / Class 11 th / Uttar Madhyama -I	Model Paper - A
--	---	-----------------

28. सामाजिक संरचना से क्या आशय है?

What is meant by social structure?

लघु उत्तरीय प्रश्न -

5 × 3 = 15

Short Answer Type Questions –

नोट- प्रश्न संख्या 29 से 33 तक के प्रत्येक प्रश्नों के उत्तर 40-50 शब्दों में देने हैं।

Note- Answer of questions from question number 29 to 33 is to be given in 40-50 words each.

29. ज्वालामुखी किसे कहते हैं? आकृति के आधार पर ज्वालामुखी के प्रकार का उल्लेख कीजिए।

What is volcano? Mention the types of volcano on the basis of shape.

30. कोणार्क के सूर्य मन्दिर और ललितपुर के दशावतार मन्दिर पर संक्षेप में टिप्पणी लिखिए।

Write short note on the Sun Temple of Konark and the Dashavatara Temple of Lalitpur.

सामाजिक विज्ञान/Soc. Science RVVP/24/11-5	वेदविभूषण प्रथम-वर्ष परीक्षा / Vedavibhushan First Year कक्षा 11वी / उत्तर मध्यमा - I / Class 11 th / Uttar Madhyama -I	Model Paper - A
--	---	-----------------

31. वैदिक वाङ्मय का भारतीय संविधान पर प्रभाव को समझाइए।

Explain the impact of Vedic literature on the Indian Constitution.

32. उदारीकरण से आप क्या समझते हैं? उदारीकरण के प्रमुख उद्देश्य बताइए।

What do you understand by liberalization? State the main objectives of liberalization.

सामाजिक विज्ञान/Soc. Science RVVP/24/11-5	वेदविभूषण प्रथम-वर्ष परीक्षा / Vedavibhushan First Year कक्षा 11वीं / उत्तर मध्यमा - I / Class 11 th / Uttar Madhyama -I	Model Paper - A
--	--	-----------------

33. ग्रीन हाउस प्रभाव पर संक्षेप में टिप्पणी लिखिए।
Write short note on greenhouse effect.

दीर्घ उत्तरीय प्रश्न-

Long answer type questions

नोट- दीर्घ उत्तरीय प्रश्न के दो खण्ड- 'अ' और 'ब' हैं। खण्ड 'अ' में चार प्रश्न हैं, प्रत्येक के उत्तर 120 से 150 शब्दों में देने हैं।

Note – There are two sections 'A' and 'B' of the long answer type question. Section 'A' has four questions, to be answered in 120 to 150 words each.

खण्ड- अ

4×5=20

Section - A

34. जलवायु परिवर्तन से आप क्या समझते हैं? जलवायु परिवर्तन के प्राकृतिक व मानवीय कारणों का विस्तार से उल्लेख कीजिए।

What do you understand by climate change? Mention in detail the natural and human causes of climate change.

सामाजिक विज्ञान/Soc. Science RVVP/24/11-5	वेदविभूषण प्रथम-वर्ष परीक्षा / Vedavibhushan First Year कक्षा 11वी / उत्तर मध्यमा - I / Class 11 th / Uttar Madhyama -I	Model Paper - A
--	---	-----------------

36. सामाजिक संरचना की अवधारणा को स्पष्ट करते हुए सामाजिक स्तरीकरण और उसकी विशेषताओं का वर्णन कीजिए।

Explaining the concept of social structure, describe social stratification and its characteristics.

सामाजिक विज्ञान/Soc. Science RVVP/24/11-5	वेदविभूषण प्रथम-वर्ष परीक्षा / Vedavibhushan First Year कक्षा 11वीं / उत्तर मध्यमा - I / Class 11 th / Uttar Madhyama -I	Model Paper - A
--	--	-----------------

39. भारत के मानचित्र में निम्नलिखित तीर्थ क्षेत्रों को दर्शाइए -

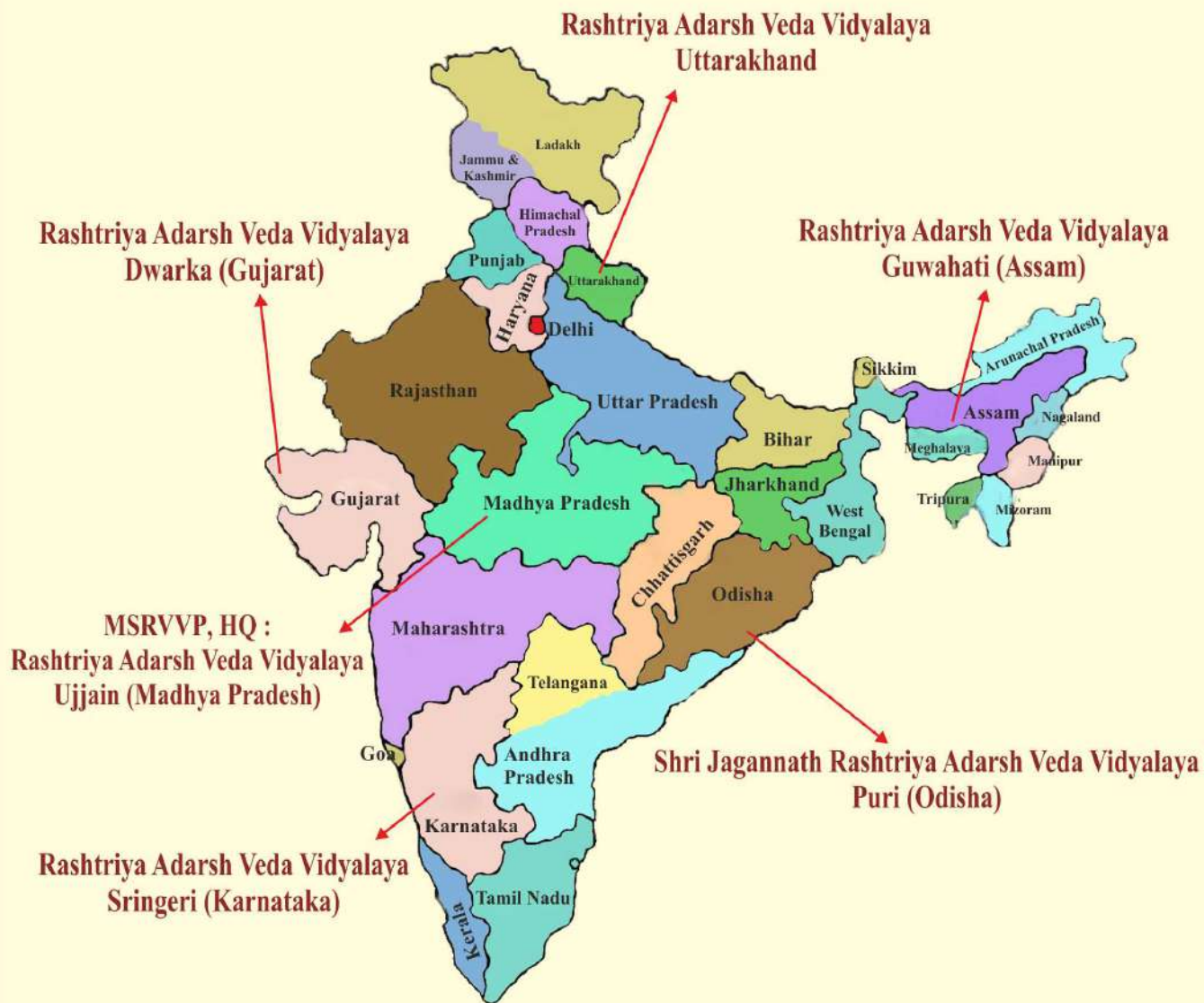
Show the following pilgrimage sites on the map of India -

- | | | | |
|---------------------------------|--|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. जगन्नाथपुरी
Jagannathpuri | 2. माया (हरिद्वार)
Maya (Haridwar) | 3. मथुरा
Mathura | 4. काशी
Kashi |
| 5. काँचीपुरम
Kanchipuram | 6. अवंतिका (उज्जैन)
Avantika (Ujjain) | 7. अयोध्या
Ayodhya | 8. द्वारिका
Dwarka |



Rashtriya Adarsh Veda Vidyalaya Run and Proposed by MAHARSHI SANDIPANI RASHTRIYA VEDA VIDYA PRATISHTHAN, UJJAIN (M.P.)

(Ministry of Education, Government of India)



MAHARSHI SANDIPANI RASHTRIYA VEDA VIDYA PRATISHTHAN, UJJAIN (M.P.)

(Ministry of Education, Government of India)

Veda Vidya Marg, Chintaman, Jawasiya, Ujjain, Madhya Pradesh 456006

Phone : (0734) 2502266, 2502254, E-mail : msrvvpujn@gmail.com, website - www.msrvvp.ac.in